

Pioneer Series

By :Mr. Ibrahim El-Sedawy



Units: 10 - 18 Zenda: 5 - 8

نحن نمد لك يد العون للنجاح والتفوق



Name : _____

Group : _____

Unit 10 : Finding Work

Key Vocabulary

applicant	متقدم (لوظيفة مثلا)	pharmacy (chemist's)	صيدلية
conscientious	مجتهد / حي الضمير	appointment	موعد / تعيين
sociable	اجتماعي (شخص)	fluent	طليق / فصيح (في لغة)
well-organised	منظم جدا	neighbourhood	(سكان) منطقة سكنية
sales	مبيعات	candidate	مرشح لعمل
CV = curriculum vitae	السيرة الذاتية	product	منتج
established	ذات مكانة مرموقة	trainee	متدرب / تحت التدريب
choir	كوراس (مجموعة غنائية)	day-care centre	مركز رعاية لمدة يوم
grade	درجة / مرتبة / صف دراسي	reputation	سمعة

Vocabulary

degree	شهادة جامعية / درجة حرارة	missing	مفقود
gradual	تدريجي	store	مخزن / متجر / يخزن
assistant	مساعد (تحت التدريب)	biology / chemistry	أحياء / كيمياء
sales assistant	بائع	establishment	مؤسسة / شركة
hire = employ	يوظف	train / training	يدرّب / تدريب
employer	صاحب العمل	representative	مندوب / ممثل
employee	موظف	pharmacist = chemist	صيدلي
temporary job	عمل مؤقت	customer service	خدمة العملاء
permanent job	وظيفة دائمة	agent / agency	وكيل / وكالة
driving licence	رخصة قيادة	certificate	شهادة مدرسية
personal qualities	صفات شخصية	personnel manager	مدير شئون العاملين
academic qualification	مؤهل علمي	personal skills (فطرية)	مهارات شخصية (فطرية)
charity work	عمل خيري	hard skills	مهارات مكتسبة
voluntary work	عمل تطوعي	IT skills	مهارات تكنولوجيا المعلومات
a job interview	مقابلة للوظيفة	technical skills	مهارات فنية
interviewer	المحاور / مدير المقابلة	skillful	ماهر فنياً
contact	يتصل بـ / اتصال	highest grade / degree	اعلى درجة
editor	محرر (لجريدة)	camping	اقامة المعسكرات
book club	نادي كتاب	medical profession	مهنة الطب
module	وحدة دراسية / جزء من مقرر	customers	زبائن
spare time	وقت الفراغ	job opportunities	فرص عمل
copy (copies)	نسخة	vacancy	وظيفة / غرفة خالية
conscientiously	باجتهاد / بجد	neighbours	الجيران
ambition / ambitious	الطموح / طمّوح	neighbourly	ودود / متعاون
the Far East	الشرق الأدنى	neighbouring	مجاور

combine	يخلط / يمزج	fluency	الطلاقة - الفصاحة
application form	استمارة طلب وظيفة	fluently = with fluency	بطلاقة

Prepositions and Expressions

leave university	يخلص جامعة	fluent in	فصيح / بليغ في
apply for	يتقدم بطلب للحصول على	Have a good command of	لديه اجادة لـ
care about	يهتم بـ	win an award for	يفوز بمكافأة من أجل
get on (well) with	ينسجم مع	get a job	يحصل على وظيفة
do a course in	يأخذ دورة في	in detail	بالتفصيل
on Saturday morning	في صباح السبت	it wouldn't matter	لن يهم
account for	يعلل - يفسر	on time	في الوقت المحدد / بدون تأخير
gain experience	يكتسب خبرة	look after / proud of	يعتنى بـ / فخور بـ
have access to	لديه مدخل لـ / معرفة بـ	travel round	يسافر لأماكن مختلفة
have / do a degree in	لديه شهادة في	deal with	يتعامل مع/يتناول (موضوع)
have a contact with	على اتصال بـ	compete against	يتنافس ضد
have a driving licence	لديه رخصة قيادة	pass a driving test	ينجح في اختبار قيادة

Antonyms

sociable	اجتماعي	unsociable	غير اجتماعي / منطوي
well-organised	منظم تنظيما جيدا	poorly organised	منظم تنظيما سيئا
established	راسخة ومعروفة	unknown	غير معروف
selfish	أناني	unselfish	غير أناني

Derivatives

verb	noun	verb	noun
assist	يساعد	assistant	يحقق / ينجز
permit	يأذن / يسمح	achievement	يمتلك
qualify	يتأهل	possession	يقرر
apply	يتقدم / يطبق	decision	يستعد / يجهز
consult	يستشير	preparation	ينظم
appoint	يحدد - يعين	organisation	يمارس مهنة
	appointment	profession	

Words go together

a fluent speaker	متحدث طلق	sales experience	خبرة في المبيعات
critical thinking	التفكير النقدي	multinational	متعدد الجنسيات
apply technology	يطبق التكنولوجيا	menial work	عمل وضيع
current job	الوظيفة الحالية	previous job	الوظيفة السابقة
creative ideas	أفكار إبداعية	constructive criticism	نقد بناء

Read the following carefully

Listening :

Interviewer: Good morning, Mr Farag. Please sit down

Mr Farag : Thank you.

Interviewer: First of all, thank you for sending us your CV. I see you have a degree in biology and chemistry from Alexandria University?

Mr Farag : That's right.

Interviewer: And you're twenty-five years old. Do you have a driving licence?

Mr Farag : Yes, I do. I passed my test last year.

Interviewer: What have you been doing since you left university?

Mr Farag : I've been working as a sales assistant in my uncle's pharmacy.

Interviewer: I see, so you have some sales experience. I wonder if you could tell me why you're leaving your uncle's company.

Mr Farag : Yes, of course. I should start by saying that I have gained a lot of useful experience working for my uncle, but I'm quite ambitious and I'd like to travel round in my job and visit other places.

Interviewer: Good. Does your uncle know you're trying to find another job?

Mr Farag : Yes, he does. He encourages me to look for jobs.

Interviewer: Good. And why do you want to work for us?

Mr Farag : My uncle's told me that yours is an established company with a very good reputation in the medical profession.

Interviewer: That's right.

Mr Farag : My uncle has sold your products for many years and has never had any problems with them.

Interviewer: And why do you think you'd be good at the job?

Mr Farag : Well, I've always been a conscientious worker and I'm a sociable person, so I'll enjoy meeting and talking to customers. I'm also well organised, so I'd always make sure I arrived on time for appointments.

Interviewer: Now, at the moment, you're living with your parents in Nasr City. How would you feel if we asked you to work in another part of the country?

Mr Farag : That'd be no problem. If I were given the job, it wouldn't matter to me where I was living and working.

Interviewer: Fine. Thank you very much for your time, Mr Farag. We have your telephone number and e-mail address at the pharmacy. I'll contact you on Saturday morning to let you know the result of this interview.

Mr Farag : Thank you very much. Goodbye. **Interviewer:** Goodbye.

Reading :

Ahmed Fawzy

Home address : El Tonsy St, Bahary, Alexandria, Egypt

CONTACT INFORMATION

Phone : 102 03 48004

Email : ahmed.fawzy@me.edu

DOB : 17 / 05 / 1999

Nationality : Egyptian

EDUCATION

2015 – 2018 English Secondary School, Alexandria General Secondary Education Certificate (GSEC), Thanawiya amma 2018 96%

2018 – present English language, Cairo University

WORK EXPERIENCE

2016 – 2018 Editor of school magazine

ACHIEVEMENTS AND AWARDS

Academic : 2018 – Special award for highest grade in English language

Sports : University Football Club – Captain of first team

Other Activities:

Charity work in home neighbourhood – in daycare centre for older people (two afternoons), camping, member of school book club and school choir

SKILLS

IT: Computing Grade 5, experience in using Microsoft office (Word and Excel)

Languages: Fluent in English, A little spoken Spanish and French

INTERESTS

Sports: Football, squash, athletics

Travel: I enjoy meeting people from other countries. I have travelled to Europe and Australia. My ambition is to visit the Far East (China and Japan).

Definitions

appointment	a meeting that has been arranged for a particular time and place
applicant	someone who has formally asked for a job, a place at a college
CV	a document that describes your education, the jobs you've done
established	a company or organization that has been in existence for ages
pharmacy	(a part of) a store where medicines are prepared and sold
sociable	friendly, liking to be with other people
product	something that is made or grown to be sold
reputation	the opinion that people have of a person, product, company etc
candidate	someone who tries to get a particular job
choir	a group of people who sing together
grade	a number or letter that shows how well you have done at school
sales	the total amount of something that is sold or the money made from it
fluent	able to speak a language without stopping or making mistakes
conscientious	showing a lot of care and attention
neighbourhood	a small area of a town or the people who live there.

daycare centre

a place where people who are old or ill can be looked after during the day

◆ لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية :

DOB	date of birth	IT	information technology
BA	bachelor of arts	M.Sc.	Master of science
B.Sc.	bachelor of science	Tel. no.	telephone number
ASAP	as soon as possible	etc.	etecetra
GSEC	General Secondary Education Certificate	Phd	doctor of philosophy (the highest degree)

Language Notes

interview	مقابلة شخصية (للوّظيفه) / مقابلة (إذاعية / تليفزيونية / صحفية)		
appointment	موعد / ميعاد	conference	مؤتمر
meeting	اجتماع	chat	درشة

Ex: I had an **interview** for a job with a publishing firm.

I'd like to make an **appointment** with Doctor Evans, please.

He attended a **conference** on women's rights

I'm afraid she's in a **meeting** - I'll ask her to call you back later.

Why don't you give me a call and we'll have a **chat**?

applicant	متقدم (بطلب) للحصول علي شيء (وظيفة / جنسية / تأشيرة / منحة / قرض)
candidate	مرشح (لوظيفة / في الانتخابات) متقدم لامتحان ما
nominee	مرشح (رسميا) لوظيفة هامة أو جائزة

Ex: Mr Ali was one of 30 **applicants** for the manager's job.

There are three **candidates** standing in the election.

Candidates must write their names on the top page of the exam paper.

apply for	يتقدم بطلب (للحصول علي وظيفة / تأشيرة / جنسية / مكان في الجامعة، الخ)	apply in writing	يقدم الطلب كتابة
apply in person	يتقدم بالطلب شخصيا	apply to + noun	يتقدم بالطلب إلي
apply to + inf.	يتقدم بطلب لكي ..	apply	يُطبق - يوظف
apply to + noun	ينطبق علي		

Ex: She **applied for** a job with the local newspaper.

She is going to **apply for** citizenship next month.

You should **apply** immediately, **in person** or by letter.

He has **applied to** join the police.

The offer only **applies to** flights from London and Manchester.

I **applied to** four universities and was accepted by all of them.

Some of the children seem unable to **apply** what they have learned.

salary	مرتب شهري أو سنوي (اسم يعد)
wages	أجرة (بالساعة أو اليوم أو الأسبوع) اسم لا يعد (جمع)
fees	أجرة التاكسي
	أنتعاب - أجر (محامى - دكتور)
fare	

Ex: His **salary** is 300 pounds a month. The carpenter's **wages** are high.
 Doctor's **fees** are very high. After I'd arrived, I gave the driver the **fare**.

Language Functions

Questions often used during interviews

Questions	Answers
Do you have any work experience?	Yes, I worked as a secretary for an accountant for a year.
What are your interests and hobbies?	I enjoy meeting people from other countries. I have travelled
Which exams have you passed?	I passed all my school exams and I have a degree in business studies.
Which skills have you got?	I can speak English well and I can use Microsoft Word and Excel.
Can you tell me about any awards or achievements?	I have a special award for highest grade in English language

Choose the correct answer:

- 1- My brother is more (**ambitious – selfish – sociable – unreliable**) than me.
He gets on with everyone he meets.
- 2- The company received over 100 CVs from interested (**applications – employers – applicants – managers**).
- 3- My bank is an (**establishing – establishment – established – establisher**) company. It has been in business for over 100 years.
- 4- If you need any medicine, there's a (**physical – chemist – medical – pharmacy**) in the village.
- 5- My uncle's business had a very good (**reputation – imputation – tumour – applicant**). Everyone knew it sold very good products.
- 6- If you want to see the doctor, you will need to make an (**application – disappointment – appointment – employment**).
- 7- Tarek is very (**conscious – unconscious – established – conscientious**)
If he starts a job, he will always finish it, even if it very difficult
- 8- I need some medicine. Is there a (**chemistry – pharmacy – grocery – beauty shop**) near here?
- 9- Our family has an (**cooked – detached – drawn – established**) business. It was started by my grandfather in 1935.

- 10- Our school has a very good (**application – reputation – socialization – friendship**). All the students do very well here.
- 11- When they are applying for a job, some people start their (**B.Sc. – AD – DVD – CV**) with personal details. Others put their qualifications first.
- 12- Ali is the most (**fluent – sociable – conscientious – lazy**) student in the class. He works hard and cares about what he does.
- 13- It is important for nurses to get on with their patients, so the hospital is looking for (**social – lazy – sociable – unfriendly**) young people to train.
- 14- Is your cousin going to (**supply – imply – qualify – apply**) for the job in the bank?
- 15- At the airport, the disabled man asked someone to (**assist – resist – set – insist**) him with his bags.
- 16- Ali decided to (**consult – construct – instruct – contract**) the doctor about his illness.
- 17- My favourite team lost and failed to (**liquefy – justify – qualify – reunify**) for the finals
- 18- When my friend asked me if I wanted to go to the beach, it was an easy (**decide – decision – decisive – deciding**). I said “Yes”.
- 19- How many English books do you (**possession – possessive – possess – confess**)?
- 20- My grandfather has (**ignored – avoided – prevented – achieved**) some amazing things during his life.
- 21- Smoking isn't (**permission – banning – permitted – prohibition**) inside the building.
- 22- Warda is the best (**candy – sandy – certificate – candidate**) for the job. She should get it.
- 23- Ayman has a lovely singing voice. He should join the school (**chore – course – choir – shore**).
- 24- Sara is (**fluency – fluently – fluent – excellent**) in three languages: Arabic, English and German.
- 25- My sister is a nurse and she often helps in the daycare (**centre – central – contra – core**).
- 26- If you want to apply for the job, please send us your (**BA – CV – IT – BC**).
- 27- What (**guard – grade – degree – certificate**) did you get in your maths exam?
- 28- Most of the houses in my grandparents' (**neighbouring – neighbor – neighbourly – neighbourhood**) are quite old.
- 29- The (**sells – sales – selling – sailing**) manager makes sure all the computers are working well.
- 30- People in this part of town are always very (**neighbouring – neighbours – neighbourly – neighbourhood**), especially if someone needs help.

- 31- We get (**in – off – away – on**) with our neighbours. Everyone's so friendly.
- 32- Even though he has only been here for six months, he can speak English (**abruptly – arrogantly – fluently – currently**).
- 33- (**Illiteracy – Emergency – Fluency – Frequency**) is perhaps the most important language skill.
- 34- These exercises are (**grade – gradual – mark – degree**). Some of them are easier than others.
- 35- Mr Sedawy has a (**degree – licence – grade – witness**) in arts and education from Zagazig University.
- 36- You are the most well- (**established – organized – behaved – dressed**) person I know. You never forget anything and you are never late.
- 37- My uncle was always (**conscientious – fluent – greedy – ambitious**). He was always looking for a better job.
- 38- She doubts whether she'll ever be able to fulfill her (**ambitious – failures – nightmares – ambitions**).
- 39- He is a very good man. He always does his work (**conscientiously – carelessly – lazily – suddenly**).
- 40- A (**geneticist – physicist – enthusiast – pharmacist**) is someone whose job is to prepare medicines in a shop or hospital
- 41- He was considered stubborn, selfish and (**tolerant – unsociable – cooperative – punctual**) as a child.
- 42- The campaign was poorly (**deprived – furnished – organized – trained**), so it did not succeed.
- 43- Karim is the most (**careless – grateful – forgetful – skilful**) player in our team. He plays so well.
- 44- My sister is a (**trainee – trainer – trained – training**) nurse at our local hospital. She will get her qualification next year.
- 45- (**Daytime – Daydream – Day care – Daylight**) is a centre where people who are old or ill can be looked after during the day.
- 46- Ali has got another job (**conference – announcement – advertisement – interview**) tomorrow.
- 47- This (**training – working – employing – hiring**) provides opportunities to acquire new skills.
- 48- The only thing he seems to care (**in – with – about – at**) is money.
- 49- My friends and I stay in (**compact – contact – attract – contract**) by email.
- 50- A (**neighbouring – neighbor – neighbourly – neighbourhood**) is a small area of town or the people who live there.
- 51- Most (**candidates – cannibals – craftsmen – corresponds**) who applied for the job haven't got the right qualifications.
- 52- Dalia applied for a (**permanent – temporary – auxiliary – partial**) job during the summer holiday.

- 53- I have a degree (**in – at – of – about**) education from Assiut University.
- 54- He has the personal (**qualities – qualifications – quantities – equalities**) that make him suitable for the job.
- 55- Despite the bad weather, the rocket left to the moon (**on – in – at – by**) time.
- 56- He is the (**operator – actor – representative – performer**) of the foreign company in Egypt. He works as its agent.
- 57- The committee will deal (**in – about – with – at**) the matter tomorrow.
- 58- She's applied (**at – to – for – about**) a job with an insurance company.
- 59- You'll never get a good job if you don't have any (**qualities – quantities – qualifications – enquiries**).
- 60- My brother works as a (**sales – sale – sell – sold**) assistant.
- 61- I filled in the (**abbreviation – absorption – application – allegation**) form and sent it off.
- 62- Are you (**planned – blamed – trained – betrayed**) in the use of this equipment?
- 63- He possessed no (**academic – domestic – elastic – organic**) qualifications.
- 64- All customers would like to buy your (**product – contact – productive – producer**).
- 65- I have very poor technical (**bills – skills – hills – wills**). Could you help me fix my computer?
- 66- To get my degree, I have to pass five of the six (**modules – ridicules – riddles – puzzles**).
- 67- Getting into university'll be my greatest (**abandonment – achievement – adjustment – amazement**).
- 68- (**Spill – Spell – Skill – shell**) is the ability to do something well.
- 69- The government has announced an (**ambitious – conscious – treacherous – ambiguous**) programme to modernize the railway network.
- 70- A lot of tourists stay at that hotel because it has a good (**reputation – repetition – research – representative**).
- 71- The company hopes that its new (**product – production – productive – producer**) will sell very well.
- 72- Adel has an (**application – application form – appointment – applicant**) to see the doctor at four o'clock.
- 73- The job advertisement said that all (**cannibals – correspondents – craftsmen – candidates**) should have a BSC in Chemistry.
- 74- Don't forget to contact to (**let – allow – permit – get**) me know your exam results, Omar.
- 75- We all should care (**with – on – of – about**) the poor and disabled.
- 76- My son got his (**BA – PhD – BSc – MSc**) and became a professor.
- 77- Every (**CV – trainer – module – neighbourhood**) has a stand or a shop to sell newspapers.

Language Focus

Reported Speech الكلام المنقول

1) Statement الجملة الخبرية

♣ عند تحويل الجملة الخبرية الى غير مباشر نحول فعل القول كالاتي :

Direct	Indirect	Direct	Indirect
say	say	say to	tell
says	says	says to	tells
said	said	said to	told

♣ تحذف **inverted commas** ويمكن استخدام **that** أو تحذف.

♣ تتغير الأزمنة من مضارع إلى ماضى و من ماضى إلى ماضى تام كما يلي :

Direct	Indirect	Direct	Indirect
write / writes	wrote	will	would
wrote	had written	shall	would
is / are writing	was / were writing	may	might
have / has written	had written	can	could
has / have been writing	had been writing	must	had to
was / were writing	had been writing	must	must have+pp

♣ هناك كلمات معينة تتغير في غير المباشر كما يلي :

Direct	Indirect
now	then
this	that
last week	the week before / the previous week
here	There
ago	before / earlier
these	those
tomorrow morning	the next morning
next Friday	the following Friday
tonight	that night
tomorrow	the next day
yesterday	the day before / the previous day
today	that day
yet	by then / yet
next week	the following week
this afternoon	that afternoon

- وجميع علامات ازمنا المضارع تعتبر دلالات لنفس الزمن فى الماضى طالما جاءت فى الغير مباشر.
- أى فعل معناه انتهى فى الماضى سواء مثبت او منفى نضعه فى الماضى التام.

♣ لاحظ تغيير الضمائر (حسب المعنى) :

- ◆ She said, "I shall pay my debts tomorrow."
She **said** she **would** pay her debts **the next day**.

♣ المشكلة التي تواجه كثير من الطلاب عند حل جملة مباشر وغير مباشر ان الجملة تأتي في الامتحان في سؤال choose بمعنى ان الجملة تكون محولة أصلاً الي الغير مباشر ومطلوب من الطالب تحديد الاختيار الصحيح والذي قد يكون الزمن او فعل القول أو غيرهما وهذا يحدث ارتباك عند بعض الطلاب ومحاولة لحل هذه المشكلة نستعرض هذه المثال للتوضيح:

Ex1 : Sara **told** Sameh **that** she (will go – went – **would go** – is going) to Aswan **the following week**.

في الجملة السابقة قمنا باختيار would go لان الجملة محولة للغير مباشر بوجود فعل القول told والرابط that والمطلوب هو تحديد الزمن الصحيح بالطبع سنقوم باستبعاد اي زمن مضارع (تام – بسيط – مستمر – فعل ناقص في المضارع) ووجود the following week التي كانت في المباشر next week فبالتالي يكون الزمن مستقبل مرفوع درجة في الغير مباشر الي would + inf

♣ يمكن استخدام الأفعال الآتية بدلا من said :

claimed ادعى / complained / mentioned ذكر / indicated وضح / informed / asserted / shouted / agreed / reported / explained / showed

- ◆ He said, "The service in this restaurant is not good."
He **complained** that the service in that restaurant was not good.
- ◆ He said, "I won't tell anyone what you said."
He **agreed** he wouldn't tell anyone what I had said.

ولكن متى لا نرفع الزمن درجة فى غير المباشر

1- الأفعال الآتية لا تتغير فى غير المباشر :

Would / should / ought to / had better / might / used to / could

- ◆ He said, "I **used to** clean my room every day."
- ◆ He said he **used to** clean his room every day.

2- لا تتغير الأزمنة إذا كان فعل say(s) فى المضارع :

- ◆ She says, "I live in a small flat in Cairo."
She **says she lives** in a small flat in Cairo.

3- لا تتغير الأزمنة إذا كانت الجملة تعبر عن حقيقة :

- ◆ She said, "Metals expand when they are heated".
She **said that** metals expand when they are heated.

4- لا تتغير الأزمنة إذا كانت الجملة قيلت منذ فترة وجيزة :

- ◆ He said just now, "I have already seen the film."
He said just now **he has** already seen the film.

5- في حالة وجود if يتغير الزمن في الحالة الأولى فقط :

◆ He said, "If it rains, I'll stay at home."

He said **if it rained, he would** stay at home.

6- اذا جاءت must في جملة تعبر عن حقيقة أو عرف سائد أو نصيحة فلا تتغير :

◆ He said to me, "You must obey your parents."

He **told** me that I **must obey** my parents.

7- لا نرفع ازمنا الماضي في حالة وجود روابط الزمن والشرط و بعد since :

◆ He said that **while** he was driving to the airport, the accident **occurred**.

♣ في حالة وجود جملتين نستخدم **and that** أو **and added that** :

◆ He said to me, "I didn't post the letter. I'll ask John to post it for me."

He **told** me he **hadn't posted** the letter **and that** he would ask for him.

♣ يمكن استخدام الأفعال الآتية بدلا من **said to** عند كغير مباشر ويأتي بعدها **v+ing** :

suggested / admitted / denied / apologized for / objected to /

recommended / insisted on + (v-ing)

◆ He said, "Let's watch the news on TV." = He **suggested watching** the news.

♣ يمكن استخدام **deny / admit** مثل **said** ولكن بعدهما جملة مثبتة :

◆ He **denied seeing** the accident. = He **denied that he had seen** the accident.

♣ يمكن استخدام الأفعال الآتية بدلا من **said to** كغير المباشر ويأتي بعدها **to + inf.** :

Promised / offered / agreed / threatened / advised / refused /

reminded / decided / + (to + inf.)

◆ He said, "I'll lend you the money you need."

He **promised to** lend me the money I needed.

He **promised that** he would lend me the money I needed.

♣ لاحظ عدم تغيير **this** الى **that** في المثال التالي لأننا ما زلنا في نفس الصباح :

- Sara said to me, "I will see you **this afternoon**." (it is now the same morning)

Sara told me she will see me **this afternoon**.

Choose the correct answer:

- 1- She (**told – wondered – complained – ordered**) that she had waited for more than an hour for her appointment.
- 2- They promised that they (**phone – would phone – will phone – phones**) us as soon as they arrived.
- 3- He admitted that he (**arrives – has arrived – had arrived – will arrive**) late the night before.
- 4- She explained that she (**hopes – will hope – hope – was hoping**) to visit me the following week.
- 5- He agreed that he would not tell anyone what I (**say – saying – will say - had said**).
- 6- Warda said just now that she (**is – had been – were – was**) hungry.

- 7- Ahmed told us that his father (**is – was – had been – has**) a doctor.
- 8- He said that when he (**is – has been – 'll be – had been**) to the museum, he saw the statues.
- 9- Nadia agreed (**would start – will start – start – to start**) revising her lessons that evening.
- 10- Nadia agreed that she (**would start – will start – start – to start**) revising that evening.
- 11- Nahla promised that she would help me to revise if I (**want – wanted – had wanted – was wanting**).
- 12- Mr Farag said he (**has passed – had passed – passed – would pass**) his driving test the previous year.
- 13- He (**said – said to – told – complained**) me that he had been working as a sales assistant.
- 14- He explained that his uncle (**has – has been – was – was being**) encouraging him to find another job.
- 15- He said that his uncle (**had sold – have sold – has sold – is selling**) our products for many years.
- 16- He said that he was a sociable person and so he (**will – shall – would – must**) enjoy talking to customers.
- 17- I told him that we aren't interviewing any more people (**that day – the day before – the next day – today**).
- 18- I (**told – promised – asked – ordered**) that I would contact him on Saturday morning.
- 19- He said he would be home the (**previous – next – before – last**) morning.
- 20- Tarek explained that they were hot because they (**was – are – had been – have been**) playing tennis.
- 21- I said, "Yes, it would." This means I (**agreed – shouted – refused – told**).
- 22- He (**said – told – wondered – asked**) he wouldn't be able to sleep until he had finished the homework.
- 23- She said that she (**want – wants – wanted – is wanting**) to be a writer.
- 24- She admitted that her brother (**was helping – is helping – he is helping – he was helping**) her with her homework that afternoon.
- 25- She said they (**met – are meeting – had been meeting – were meeting**) them there the following Saturday.
- 26- He denied (**to be – had been – was – being**) at the scene of the crime.
- 27- She said, "I (**didn't see – won't see – wasn't seen – hadn't seen**) anyone until I have finished."
- 28- She refused (**lending – lend – to lend – to lending**) me the money I needed.
- 29- The biologist said, "These fish swim upstream." The biologist said these fish (**swim – swam – swum – are swimming**) upstream.

- 30- The teacher told me what I (**have – must have – will have – had**) to do.
- 31- The teacher promised that he (**will explain – would explain – explained – had explained**) that point the following week.
- 32- He told me that his sister (**is – has been – had been – will be**) ill.
- 33- I admitted that I (**don't have – am not having – didn't have – doesn't have**) any plans.
- 34- I explained that I (**would have to – will have to – will – shall**) ask my mother.
- 35- The teacher told us that the earth (**orbit – orbited – orbits – will orbit**) the sun.
- 36- He explained that his uncle (**was helping – helps – helped – had helped**) him then.
- 37- Khaled told me that he (**plays – had played – played – was playing**) basketball the day before.
- 38- Imad said (**that – whether – weather – to**) he often wrote stories.
- 39- He said that it (**has been – was – is – had been**) always hot at this time of the year.
- 40- Sayed recommended (**to try – tried – trying – that try**) the ice cream.
- 41- The teacher told us that Russia (**is – were – has been – would be**) the biggest country in the world.
- 42- Leila says that she (**was – had been – is – is being**) ready now to go to the shops.
- 43- Haytham said that it (**will be – would be – is – is being**) hot that day.
- 44- The manager (**recommended – suggested – threatened – said**) to make us stay in late if we didn't work harder.
- 45- Mohab (**said – explained – told – admitted**) me that he'd had a busy day.
- 46- Eman said Damascus (**is – be – had been – is being**) the capital of Syria.
- 47- Karim promised that he (**will phone – would phone – phoned – had phoned**) us the next morning.
- 48- They said they were planning to study medicine (**next – the next – the following – the previous**) year.
- 49- The boy promised that he wouldn't make (**this – that – those – these**) mistakes again.
- 50- Mother said, " You'll be tired (**the next day – tomorrow – the following day – next day**)."
- 51- The coach said if it (**rained – rains – had rained – didn't rain**), they would play the match.
- 52- She promised that she (**will phone – phoned – would phone – phone**) me as soon as the plane landed.
- 53- He told us that he (**found – finds – had found – can find**) a solution to the problem.

54- Atef told his brother that he (**could use – has used – is using – use**) his own computer.

55- He (**told – asked – said to – admitted**) robbing the bank.

Exercises on Unit 10

2) Read the passage then answer the questions:

When you cut your skin, you bleed. Every one knows that. If a person loses a great deal of blood, he will become ill and may die. At one time people drank blood to make them strong. When doctors understood how blood went around inside the body, they tried ways of giving blood to people who needed it. They used a rubber tube to take blood from healthy people and give it to people who needed it. This is called blood transfusion. The blood went through a rubber tube from the arm of the healthy person into the arm of the sick person.

But, there were two problems. First it did not always work. Sometimes people died. Later, doctors found the reason for this. We do not all have the same kind of blood. There was another problem. To give blood of the right kind, the doctors had to find a person of the right blood group. Often they could not find a person in time. If they had a way to keep the blood until someone needed it, they could always have the right kind of blood. In the end, they found a way of keeping blood for a very long time. Now people can give or donate blood every three months, if they want to. The blood is put in bottles and then kept until someone needs it.

A) Choose the best answer:

1- You when you cut your skin .

- a) blood b) bleed c) lead d) breathe

2- In the past , people drank blood to be

- a) weak b) health c) ill d) strong

3- To give someone blood is called blood

- a) transfusion b) transportation c) transmission d) transaction

4- Now doctors can keep blood for

- a) 15 minutes b) 20 minutes c) a long time d) a short time

5- People don't usually have blood group.

- a) the same b) different c) alike d) similar

6- To give something useful to someone means to

- a) bleed b) transform c) need d) donate

B) Answer the following questions:

7- What happens if a person loses a great deal of blood?

8- What is meant by blood transfusion?

9- Why did some people die during blood transfusion?

10- Give a suitable title to the passage

Unit 11: Sir Cecil : Spring-Rice "Day"

Key Vocabulary

ambassador (to)	سفير (ل)	planets	كواكب
throughout	طوال / على مدار	activity	نشاط
task	مهمة "للتنفيذ المباشر"	diplomat	دبلوماسي
will	وصية / إرادة	fellow	شخص / زميل / رفيق
continents	قارات	president	رئيس دولة
toil / toiler	يكدح / كادح	grain (s)	محصول (حبوب/ كثبان رملية)
Persian	فارسي (لغة ايران)	blizzard	عاصفة (ثلوج ورياح)
Mandarin	ماندرين (لغة الصين)	downpour	انهطار المطر (في وقت قصير)
Spanish	اسباني (اسبانيا وارجنتين)	gale	عاصفة (رياح قوية جدا)

Vocabulary

blow / blew / blown	تهب (الرياح)	rainforest	غابة مطيرة
fall / fell / fallen	تتساقط (الامطار)	spoken language	لغة مستخدمة
set / set / set	تغرب (الشمس)	hostel	بيت الشباب
rise / rose / risen	تشرق (الشمس)	snowy	ثلجي
pour (down)	ينهمر (المطر)	rainy	ممطر
job title	لقب / مسمى وظيفي	windy	عاصف
personification	تشخيص	presidential	رئاسي
poet / poem	شاعر / قصيدة	probably	من المحتمل
write poetry	يكتب / يؤلف الشعر	name / call	يسمى
landforms	تضاريس	form	يتشكل / يشكل
verse (stanza)	مقطع شعري	incredible	لا يصدق
salt or sand	ملح أو تراب	feelings	مشاعر
wheat or crop	قمح أو غلة	shape	شكل
sea and rain	البحر والمطر	include	يشمل
sun and air	الشمس والهواء	joke	يمزح
university degree	درجة جامعية	sweep	يكنس
embassy	سفارة	teenager	مراهق
China / Iran	الصين / ايران	diamonds	الماس
French / German	فرنسي / الماني	career	مهنة
extreme	متطرف (للطقس)	not in vain	ليس هباءاً
effective	فعال	document	وثيقة
Portuguese	برتغالي	population	السكان
Portugal	البرتغال	reference	مرجع
Argentina	الأرجنتين	events	أحداث

Prepositions & Expressions

spend (time) with	يقضى وقت مع	toil up ... to	يصعد ... للوصول لـ
become friends with	يكون صداقة مع	There used to be	كان من المعتاد أن يوجد
come from	يأتي من	graduate from	يتخرج من
break up	ينهار / يتجزأ	translate into	يترجم ... الى
become ... to / in	يصبح (سفير) لـ / فى	express ideas	يعبر عن الافكار
a way to relax	طريقة للاسترخاء	must be joking	يمزح بالتأكيد
make continents	يسبب وجود القارات	cause damage	يسبب تلف
move with difficulty	يتحرك بصعوبة	up and down	ذهاباً وإياباً
How big it is	كيف يكون حجمها	blow here and there	تهب هنا وهناك
take turns	يتناوب الأدوار	The difference between	الفرق بين
aged = at the age of	في عمر	message of the poem	رسالة القصيدة
grains of sand	كثبان رملية	grow up	يكبر
a strong-willed man	رجل ذو ارادة قوية	blow up	ينفجر
do an activity	يقوم بنشاط ما	do/perform/carry out a task	يقوم بمهمة
turn on / off	يفتح / يغلق	a grain of sensitivity	ذرة احساس
expert on / in / at	خبير فى	rhyme with	ينقافى مع

Antonyms

import	يستورد	export	يصدر
toil	يكح	rest	يستريح
joking	يمزح	serious	جاد
include	يشتمل / يضم	exclude	يستثنى / يستبعد
activity	نشاط	inactivity (laziness)	كسل
personification	تشخيص	generalization	تعميم

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
believe	يعتقد / يؤمن	belief	اعتقاد	believable	يُمكن تصديقه
surprise	يدهش	surprise	دهشة / مفاجأة	surprising	مدهش
amaze	يُدْهَل	amazement	ذهول	amazing	مذهل
express	يعبر عن	expression	تعبير	express	واضح
				expressive	معبر
create	يخلق / يبدع	creation	خلق	creative	مبدع / خلاق
		creativity	ابداع / ابتكار		
act	يمثل / يؤدي	activity	نشاط	active	نشيط
warm	يدفى	warmth	دفء	warm	دافئ

Words go together

raise awareness	يزيد الوعي	population explosion	انفجار سكاني
nervous shock	صدمة عصبية	research trip	رحلة لعمل ابحاث
learn languages	يتعلم اللغات	frozen food	طعام مجمد
The First World War	الحرب العالمية الاولى	air pressure	ضغط الهواء
official document	وثيقة رسمية	The United States	الولايات المتحدة

Read the following carefully

Listening :

Male Voice : I'm a journalist and I meet many interesting people. Yesterday, I met Andy Turner, an **expert on** twentieth-century poetry who is writing a book about the English poet Sir Cecil Spring-Rice. This is what he told me.

First, I asked Andy where the poet had grown up. He told me that Sir Cecil Spring-Rice was born in London in 1859. He was the son of a diplomat.

Then I asked him if he could tell me about Spring-Rice's career. He said that after **getting a degree at** Oxford University, Spring-Rice had become a diplomat and had spent time in North America. He **became friends with** the future president of the USA, Theodore Roosevelt. His work then took him to many different countries.

I asked him which countries Spring-Rice had worked in. He said that he had been a diplomat in Japan, Iran and Russia. He had also worked in Cairo. He then became an ambassador, and returned to the USA to become the British **ambassador to** the United States in 1912. Then, I asked what he had done as an ambassador to the United States. Andy Turner said that **while he had been** in the USA, Spring-Rice had persuaded the president that the United States should help Britain during the **First World War**. They did this in 1917.

Unfortunately, Spring-Rice died a year later, in 1918, aged 58. I asked him whether it was true that he had helped students **at Oxford University**. I then asked Andy if he could talk about Spring-Rice's writing. He said that Spring-Rice had written poems throughout his life, although they were only published after he died. He also helped to translate many **Persian** poems into English.

Finally, I said that Spring-Rice had clearly been a busy man. I asked Andy why the ambassador had written poems. He said that he had probably found writing a **good way to relax** and also to express his feelings and ideas. Many people say that it's easier to express a feeling or an idea in a short poem than in a story.

Reading :

'I am busy,' said the sea.
'I am busy. Think of me
making continents to be.
I am busy,' said the sea.
'I am busy,' said the rain.
'When I fall it's not in vain;
Wait and you will see the grain.
I am busy,' said the rain.
'I am busy,' said the air,
'Blowing here and blowing there,
Up and down and everywhere.
I am busy,' said the air.
'I am busy,' said the sun.
'All my planets, every one,
Know my work is never done.
I am busy,' said the sun.
Sea and rain and air and sun,
Here's a fellow toiler – one,
Whose task will soon be done.

Definitions

ambassador	an important person who represents their government in another country
president	the official leader of a country which doesn't have a king or queen
throughout	during all of a period or event
will	a document which says who you want to give your things to after you die
Mandarin	the main language of China
fellow	a man or boy who work, study, travel etc, with you
fellow	a person doing the same activity as someone else
grain	a very small piece or amount of something (a grain of sand)
grain	wheat, corn, rice or a crop used for food
toiler	someone who works very hard / moves slowly and with difficulty
blizzard	a storm with a lot of wind and snow
gale	a very strong wind
downpour	a lot of rain that falls in a short time

Language Notes

a blizzard / a downpour / a gale

- You would be in a **blizzard** if the weather was **very snowy and windy**.
- You would be in a **downpour** if the weather was **very rainy**.
- You would be in a **gale** if the weather was **very windy**.

well + صفة well – educated / well – organized
good + اسم a good education / a good organization

busy + (ing) - I'm busy doing my homework.

else آخر A fellow is a person doing the same activity as someone else.
 لاحظ استخدام (else) مع هذه الكلمات Who else / What else / anything else

يهدأ fall silent ينام fall asleep تصبح شاغرة fall vacant يمرض fall ill

rise لا تأخذ مفعول - The sun rises in the morning. (تشرق – ينهض – يرتفع)
 - Why do you think prices rise so high ? - He rose quickly and left the meeting.
raise تأخذ مفعول (يرفع – يربي) - Farmers raise cattle. - Raise your hand .
 - We want to raise money يجمع تبرعات for the orphans ?

once ذات مرة - It's believed that once there was a continent, called Pangaea.

President الرئيس فلان - The president of رئيس دولة كذا

Spot the Difference

plant	نبات	planet	كوكب
blow	تهب	below	تحت / أسفل
pour	تنهمر	poor	فقير
throughout	عبر / من خلال	breakthrough	طفرة
downpour	أمطار مفاجئة وغزيرة	pour down	ينهمر
fall	يتساقط	fail	يرسب
message	رسالة	massage	تدليك

Countries and Languages

Spanish	Spain, Mexico, Argentina	English	Australia
French	France, Belgium, Switzerland	Mandarin	China
German	Germany, Switzerland, Austria النمسا	Persian	Iran
Portuguese	Protugal, Brazil, Angola	Arabic	Egypt

Language Functions

Expressing surprise

Really? I find that surprising.	You wouldn't, would you?
You must be joking!	Never! That's incredible.
I don't believe it.	That's amazing!

Choose the correct answer :

- 1- (**Persian – Mandarin – English – Spanish**) is the main language of the people of China.
- 2- The (**clerk – diver – president – minister**) is the official leader of a country which does not have a king or queen.
- 3- The (**ambassador – king – queen – president**) represents his country in another country.
- 4- (**Through – Throughout – thoroughly – throw**) means during all of a period or event.
- 5- A (**will – well – wall – wool**) is a document which says who you want to give your things to after you die
- 6- The president of Egypt asked to have a meeting with the British(**doctor – engineer – ambassador – accountant**) to Egypt.
- 7- Ahmed's grandfather left him some money in his (**well – well off – wall – will**).
- 8- She spoke clearly and fluently (**threw – throughout – with – by**) the job interview.
- 9- (**French – Spanish – Mandarin – Portuguese**) is one of the most spoken languages in the world
- 10- Riham wants to (**waste – lose – find – spend**) some time with her cousins in the summer.
- 11- Applicants for the job should have a university (**mark – grade – degree – card**).
- 12- Walid and Imad first (**become – be – are – became**) friends when they met at primary school.
- 13- You need to be fluent to (**speak – read – tell – translate**) Arabic poems into English.
- 14- Many teenagers find it difficult to (**say – express – surplus – impress**) their feelings .
- 15- I find that swimming is a very good way to (**relax – sleep – walk – run**).
- 16- The farm workers (**toilet – tangled – tarred – toiled**) in the fields all day.
- 17- Who is that (**follow – fellow – pillow – personal**) that your brother was with this morning?
- 18- There are (**grains – seeds – drops – grams**) of sand on the floor.
- 19- The old man slowly (**slept – stayed – told – toiled**) up the hill to the market.

- 20- My cousin is staying in a hostel with his (**fellow – falcon – felon – foes**) travellers in Jordan.
- 21- The farmer uses some (**sand – dust – specks – grains**) to make bread.
- 22- Which words (**rhyme – poem – poet – verse**) with sea?
- 23- The wind is (**staying – pouring – going – blowing**) from the north today.
- 24- In this country, the rain (**fills – spills – falls – pours**) mostly near the coast.
- 25- The sky starts to turn red just before the sun (**rises – shines – sets – falls**).
- 26- It was dark when I woke up because the sun had not yet (**set – sit – blown – risen**).
- 27- You would be in a blizzard if the weather was very (**snowy and windy – windy – rain – hot and windy**).
- 28- You would be in a downpour if the weather was very (**snowy – windy – rainy – hot**).
- 29- You would be in a gale if the weather was very (**snowy – windy – rainy – hot**).
- 30- Did you hear the wind (**blow – blew – blown – blows**) last night?
- 31- The rain was very heavy last night. It was (**spilling – pouring – powering – blowing**) down.
- 32- You can see the rain (**falling – fell – fallen – full**) on the river.
- 33- At what time , does the sun (**set – rise – raise – arouse**) in the morning ?
- 34- At what time does the sun (**up – down – rise – set**) this evening?
- 35- In summer, the sun (**rises – raises – sits – sets**) at nearly midnight in the north of Europe.
- 36- My uncle speaks Spanish as he once worked as the Egyptian (**personnel – president – ambassador – ruler**) to Argentina.
- 37- There was a (**pour – thunder – gale – blow**) last night and many buildings were damaged by the wind.
- 38- There was a (**dust storm – drought – rain – downpour**) this morning and many of the roads flooded.
- 39- Here's a (**follow – foul – fuel – fellow**) toiler-one, Whose task will soon be done.
- 40- Do you think that the use of (**personification – character – specialization – privatization**) in the poem is successful?
- 41- The (**ball – bell – gale – gull**) blew down a lot of trees.
- 42- The (**bulldozer – blizzard – buzz – beans**) struck the north east yesterday causing serious damage
- 43- Hundreds of men (**told – toiled – toasted – tested**) for years at building the pyramid.
- 44- If he had a (**grain – gram – seed – dust**) of sensitivity, he wouldn't ask her about her divorce.
- 45- Sir Cecil Spring became friends (**with – off – for – by**) Theodore Roosevelt.

- 46- The teacher was angry because two boys were talking (**without – after – throughout – along**) the lesson.
- 47- (**Persian – Mandarin – English – Spanish**) is the language of the people of Iran.
- 48- (**Persian – Mandarin – English – Spanish**) is the language of the people of Australia.
- 49- (**Persian – Mandarin – English – Spanish**) is the language of the people of Argentina.
- 50- It is believed that once there was only one big continent, (**calling – called – was called – is called**) Pangea.
- 51- Sir Cecil Spring graduated (**in – from – for – by**) Oxford University.
- 52- He became the British (**embassy – ambassadress – ambassador – pilot**) to the USA.
- 53- The ambassador is a (**journalist – technician – diplomat – political**) who represents his country in a foreign country.
- 54- He spent two years in Cairo (**to work – working – work – worked**) for Bank Misr.
- 55- My father died, (**age – ages – aging – aged**) 78.
- 56- His money helped students to learn languages (**from – on – of – at**) Oxford University.
- 57- He asked the (**king – queen – prince – president**) of the USA to help Britain.
- 58- Asia is the biggest (**country – city – town – continent**) in the world.
- 59- What helped to (**create – recruit – cute – recreation**) the shape of the continents?
- 60- Does the poem (**include – contain – consist – resist**) any of your ideas?
- 61- We should grind the grains of (**sand – wheat – rice – lentils**) to get flour.
- 62- My eyes has a severe pain due to a (**grain – pain – rain – brain**) of sand.
- 63- They tried in (**vain – rain – main – pain**) to persuade her to go with them.
- 64- The (**president's – maid's – servant's – plumber's**) procession blocked the road yesterday.
- 65- The earth is one of the (**plants – stars – galaxies – planets**) which orbit the sun.
- 66- The new factory should (**exist – find – create – extract**) 500 jobs.
- 67- I'm very busy (**doing – done – to do – do**) some repairs to my car.
- 68- Tom spent most of his (**work – job – profession – career**) as a teacher.
- 69- Mercury is the smallest (**plan – plain – planet – plan**) in the solar system.
- 70- Finding the killer isn't going to be an easy (**comission – task – work – profession**) at all.
- 71- He was promoted as his work was (**will – well – bad – badly**) organized.
- 72- I don't know anything (**other – another – else – also**) about this matter.

Language Focus

Reported questions

said / said to → **asked:**

ويمكن تحويل السؤال إلى غير المباشر باستخدام إحدى العبارات الآتية :

Present	Past
I'd like to know	He inquired
I want to know	I wanted to know
I wonder	I wondered
I don't know	I had no idea
He asks	I didn't know
Can / Could you tell me...?	He asked

♦ لاحظ عدم استخدام ضمير مفعول بعد wonder / inquire

♦ في حالة الأسئلة التي يجاب عنها بـ **yes/ no** نستخدم **if / whether** كأداة ربط و يأتي بعدها الفاعل ثم الفعل : (نستخدم **whether** فقط مع **or not**).

♣ She said, "Do you speak French?" = She asked **if** I spoke French.

♣ He said, "Have you ever been abroad?" = He wondered **if** I had ever

♦ في حالة الأسئلة التي تبدأ بأداة استفهام، نستخدم نفس أداة الاستفهام كأداة ربط و يأتي بعدها الفاعل ثم الفعل :

♣ He said, "Where did you spend your summer holiday?"

= He wanted to know **where** I had spent my summer holiday.

♣ He said, "What are you doing now?" = He asked **what** I was doing then.

♦ لاحظ حذف الكلمات **do / does / did** عند تحويل السؤال إلى غير مباشر .

♦ تغيير الأزمنة فقط إذا بدأ السؤال بفعل في الماضي :

♣ "How much do you earn?" = He **wonders** how much I **earn**.

♣ "How much do you earn?" = He **wondered** how much I **earned**.

♦ في حالة تحويل سؤاليين إلى غير مباشر نستخدم **and if** أو أداة استفهام **+ and** :

♣ He said, "Why are you late? Did you miss the bus?"

He wondered why I was late **and if** I had missed the bus.

♣ He said, "Where did you buy it. How much did it cost you?"

He wanted to know where I had bought it **and how** much it had cost me.

♦ في حالة العرض **offer** : (نحول الى shall could)

♣ He said, "Shall I get you some tea?" = He asked if he **could** get me some tea.

= He **offered** me some tea. / He **offered to** get me some tea.

♦ في حالة الطلب **request** : (نحول الى shall could)

♣ He said, "Could you open the window, please?" = He **asked me to** open

= He **asked** me if I **could** open the window.

◆ في حالة الاقتراح **suggestion** : (نحول الى shall should)

♣ "Shall we go now?" He asked me if / whether we **should** go now.

Choose the correct answer:

- 1- He asked me (**what – who – weather – if**) I knew that he had been ill.
- 2- We wanted to know (**what – when – where – if**) they thought of his idea.
- 3- Rawia asked Kholoud what she (**has done – does – would do – had done**) the evening before.
- 4- Hany asked Fady whether he (**went – had gone – goes – could go**) to the museum the next day.
- 5- The teacher (**said – told – inquired – promised**) whether we had found the homework easy or difficult.
- 6- Leila wondered if we (**shall go – will go – can go – should go**) to the park.
- 7- Imad wanted to know when Hesham (**go – will go – can go – would go**) to university.
- 8- First, I asked Andy where the poet (**grows up – has grown up – grew up – had grown up**).
- 9- I asked the strange man (**if – that – who – weather**) he could tell me about his career.
- 10- I asked him whether it was true that he (**has helped – had helped – helps – help**) students at Oxford University.
- 11- "Do you have a pencil?" – I asked him if he (**has – had – had had – have**) a pencil.
- 12- He asked me where I (**am living – was living – had lived – has lived**) at that moment.
- 13- She asked me which subjects (**I am studying – was I studying – am I studying – I was studying**) the following year.
- 14- She asked him what (**had he been doing – he was doing – he had been doing – he is doing**) since he left school.
- 15- He asked why (**I want – I wanted – do I want – did I want**) to work abroad.
- 16- They asked if my parents (**know – are knowing – have known – knew**) I was there.
- 17- He asked me (**whether – weather – if – that**) I had a driving licence or not.
- 18- They want to know who (**did win – won – do win – had won**) the match.
- 19- They wanted to know who (**did win – won – do win – had won**) the match.
- 20- He asked me why (**I had wanted – had I wanted – did I want – I wanted**) to work for their company.
- 21- She wanted to know how (**I would feel – would I feel – I feel – had I felt**) about working in another part of the country.
- 22- She wondered (**if – whether – where – why**) Sama'd gone to school or not.
- 23- I (**inquired – wondered – wanted to know – told**) the name of Ali's cousin.

- 24- I asked Amr what (**he had doing – he was doing – was he doing – he had done**) then.
- 25- He asked me just now whether I (**followed – had followed – follows – am following**) him or not.
- 26- The teacher asked me what (**will happen – happened – would happen – happens**) if wood is put in water.
- 27- Mariam asked me whether we (**usually go – had usually gone – were usually going – usually went**) to the park.
- 28- The teacher wanted to know which exams I (**passed – have passed – am passing – had passed**).
- 29- Mr. Sedawy asked me (**if – weather – that – did**) I'd done my homework.
- 30- Hala asked Ola (**what will she do – what would she do – what she would do – what she will do**) the following Monday.
- 31- We (**inquired – admitted – threatened – promised**) about the price of a room at the hotel.
- 32- My sister asked me if we (**shall go – go – went – should go**) to the station.
- 33- He asked me if I (**saw – see – had seen – was seeing**) his glasses.
- 34- She asked me, "(**Have you watched – Did you watched – You'd watched – You watched**) the DVD?"
- 35- She asked me (**which – what – whether – who**) I was going out with.
- 36- She asked me (**carrying – to carry – carry – carried**) the bag for her.
- 37- He wanted to know how much (**I pay – I have paid – had I paid – I had paid**) for my car.
- 38- She asked him (**if – whether – to – that**) leave then or she would phone the police.
- 39- She asked me which university (**had I been to – go I to – did I go to – I had been to**).
- 40- She asks him what he (**has been doing – was doing – had been doing – is doing**) since he left school.
- 41- She asked me (**if – whether – when – which**) university I had been to.
- 42- He asked me (**why – which – wheather – whose**) I wanted to work for their company.
- 43- She asked me (**when – that – where – weather**) I was living at that time.
- 44- She asked me why (**applied – had I applied – I had applied – did I apply**) for that job.
- 45- He wanted to know whether anyone (**had seen – has seen – sees – saw**) the book he was reading.
- 46- She wondered when (**had I begun – I had begun – did I begin – I began**) singing with that band.
- 47- The inspector asked him whether he always (**caught – catch – catched – had caught**) such an early train.

- 48- He asked me when (**would the next exam – the next exam will – will the next exam – the next exam would**) take place.
- 49- I don't know why (**are they – they are – were they – they had**) buying a new house.
- 50- I would like to know if you (**prefer – preferred – prefers – preferring**) to run your own business.
- 51- He said to me, "What (**you are – are you – you were – were you**) doing now?"
- 52- He asked me to give (**him – me – I – he**) some money.
- 53- The interviewer asked me what my name (**had been – is – was – be**).
- 54- I asked Noha if she had enjoyed her stay in Alex (**last week – the next week – the week before – the week ago**).
- 55- She wanted to know what (**I did – I do – I will do – do I do**) in spare time.
- 56- He wanted to know (**what – whether – unless – who**) she was married to.

Exercises on Unit 11

2) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Hi Dalia,

You asked me to tell you about the interview that I had on Tuesday. It did not start very well. My appointment was at eight o'clock so I had to get up very early. Then there was a downpour as I was walking to the office so I was very wet when I arrived. However, there were two other people who were there for interviews too, and they also got wet! When it was my turn, the manager was very friendly. He looked at my CV and said that I had excellent qualifications. Then he asked me to describe myself. I said I was sociable and conscientious.

He asked me if I spoke any languages. I told him that I spoke English fluently. Then he asked me if I had done any volunteering. I told him that I often helped at a local charity for poor and disadvantaged children. He also asked me about my free time activities. I told him that I enjoyed weightlifting. He said that he found that surprising but also impressive! He asked me why I wanted to work for his company. I explained that it had a very good reputation and that I had always wanted to work as a tour guide in a big organisation.

At the end of the interview, he said that I was an excellent candidate and I was qualified to do the job. He explained that he would make up his mind about who would get the job in the next few days. I really hope that I get **it**. Write soon.

Best wishes, Ola

A) Choose the correct answer :

1- Which of these questions did the manager ask?

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| a) Do you do volunteering? | b) Can you do volunteering? |
| c) Have you done any volunteering? | d) Why don't you do volunteering? |

2- Which information did the manager find surprising?

- a) Ola helps a charity. b) Ola was wet.
c) Ola is fluent in English. d) Ola likes weightlifting.

3- Why did the manager want to know if she had done any volunteering?

- a) As he can't pay her. b) To find out if she is a kind person.
c) As he works for a charity. d) As he needs someone to work with children.

4- What is the main idea of the email?

- a) Ola knows she's got the job. b) Ola doesn't know if she's got the job yet.
c) Ola can't get the job. d) Why Ola will start the job in a few days.

5- What does the underlined word it refer to?

- a) the tour guide b) the job c) the manager d) the company

6- What do you think that disadvantaged means?

- a) rich b) having problems c) strong d) voluntary

B) Answer the following question :

7- When was Ola's interview?

8- Do you think that Ola will get the job? Why/Why not?

9- Why do you think the manager wanted to know if Ola spoke any languages?

10- How many people were there for interviews other than Ola?

4) Finish the following dialogue:

Ali is interviewing Ahmed about a job in an animal's hospital.

Ali :

Ahmed : Yes. I've worked with a vet for six months.

Ali : Where are you from, Ahmed?

Ahmed :

Ali : I'm from Cairo, too.?

Ahmed : I love studying spiders. I collect them.

Ali :

Ahmed : I have one here if you'd like to see it. It's not poisonous.

Ali :

5) Write a paragraph of (120) words on ONE of the following:

- a) Why you should continue learning after you leave school
b) What makes a person employable

6) A) Translate into Arabic:

1- Unemployment is a serious problem that the public and private organizations must solve.

2- Personal skills are qualities you need if you want to succeed in your career.

B) Translate ONE (1) sentence into English:

1- لقد حصل على الدرجة النهائية لأنه كان يذاكر باجتهاد طوال العام الدراسي.

2- إن مستقبل الحياة علي الأرض يتوقف علي نجاح الجهود التي نبذلها للتخلص من التلوث البيئي.

Unit 12: Lifelong skills

Key Vocabulary

enroll on	يُسجل / يُدرج اسمه	department	قسم
retrain	يعيد تدريب	promotion	ترقية / ترويج
mature	ناضج (يزيد سنه عن 25 سنة)	receptionist	موظف استقبال
redundant	عاطل (زائد عن الحاجة)	qualified	مؤهل
Open University	الجامعة المفتوحة	ideal	مثالي / أفضل
creative writing	كتابة ابداعية	employable	صالح للعمل
worthwhile	جدير بالاهتمام / مفيد	enjoyable	ممتع
create	يخلق / يبدع	provide	يوفر / يتيح

Vocabulary

reward	يكافئ / مكافأة (مالية)	full-time work	عمل لوقت كامل
rewarding	مُجزي / عائد بالنفع	new challenge	تحدي جديد
a similar job	وظيفة مشابهه	individuals	أفراد
similarity	التشابه	promote	يُرقى
maturity	النضج	get promoted	يترقى
working life	الحياة العملية	appreciate	يُقدر
personal life	حياة شخصية	sensible idea	فكرة حكيمة / معقولة
worthwhile experience	خبرة قيمة	highly qualified	ذو كفاءة عالية
grown up / adult	ناضج / بالغ	highly skilled	ذات مهارة عالية
finance department	قسم الماليات	staff	هيئة عاملين
opportunities	فرص	referee	حكم
lifelong learning	التعلم مدى الحياة	members	أعضاء
distance learning	التعلم عن بعد	require	يتطلب / يستلزم
colleagues	زملاء العمل / الدراسة	supply	يزود
enrolment	تسجيل	ideally	بشكل مثالي
a pay (.... rise)	مرتب (علاوة)	provider	ممول / مزود / متعهد
local college	كلية محلية	reception	الاستقبال
remain	يظل / يبقى	profession	مهنة
particularly	على نحو محدد / بصورة خاصة	position	وظيفة
corridor	ممر / ممشى	teaching	التدريس
interviews	مقابلات	unemployment	البطالة
courses	دورات	bookstore	مكتبة
evening classes	فصول مسائية	computer skills	مهارات البرمجة
education centres	مراكز تعليمية	mechanized	ممكن (مُنتج آلياً)
Master's degree (MSc)	درجة الماجستير	current work	العمل الحالي

Prepositions, Idioms & Expressions

earn much money	يكسب مال كثير	get new skills	يتعلم مهارات جديدة
lose a job	يخسر وظيفته	ideal for	مثالي لـ
be on a course	ملتحق بمقرر دراسي	object to	يعترض علي
do a course in	يدرس مقرر في	at any age	في أي سن
make up his mind	يقرر	miss opportunities	تفوته الفرص
make up for	يعوض	take up opportunities	يستفيد من الفرص
make up stories	يخترق / يؤلف	in two years' time	في خلال عامين
look for employment	يبحث عن عمل	satisfied with	راض عن
go back to education	يعود الى التعليم	on the internet	على الانترنت
By the end of ...	بنهاية	have a family	لديه / يُكون عائلة
change jobs	يغير وظيفته	keep up with	يساير / يواكب
important for	مهم لـ	increase / rise in	زيادة في
retire from	يحال للمعاش من	communicate with	يتواصل مع
study by distance learning			يدرس عن طريق التعلم عن بعد
a course with the Open University			دورة عن طريق الجامعة المفتوحة

Antonyms

employable	صالح للعمل	unemployable	غير صالح للعمل
employed	موظف	unemployed	بدون عمل / عاطل
skilled	ماهر / مُدرب / ذو خبرة	unskilled	عديم الخبرة
rewarding	مُجزي	unrewarding	غير مجزي
worthwhile	جدير بالاهتمام	worthless	تافه / غير مفيد
mature	ناضج	immature	غير ناضج
local	محلي	international	عالمي
qualified	مؤهل	unqualified	غير مؤهل

Derivatives

Verb فعل	Noun اسم	Adjective صفة
mature ينضج	maturity النضج	mature ناضج
reward يكافأ	reward مكافأة	rewarding مُجزي / عائد بالنفع
qualify يؤهل	qualification المؤهل	qualified مؤهل
retire يتقاعد	retirement (-ing) تقاعد	retired متقاعد
expect يتوقع	expectation توقع	expected متوقع
employ يوظف / يشغل	employer صاحب العمل	employed لديه عمل
	employee موظف	unemployed عاطل
	employment عمل / شغل	self-employed ذو عمل حر

Words go together

ideal choice	اختيار مثالي	skilled labour	عمالة ماهرة
For some reason	لسبب ما	qualified workforce	قوى عاملة مؤهلة
as much as	ما يعادل	put forward an idea	يطرح فكرة
summer school	مقرر دراسي صيفي	an object of ridicule	موضع سخريّة
sufficiently qualified	مؤهل بما يكفي	provide job opportunities	يوفر فرص عمل

Read the following carefully

Listening :

Man 1: Two years ago, I **lost my job** when *the company* I'd worked for since I left school **closed**. I looked for a similar job and sent my **CV** to a lot of companies, but I didn't **get** any **interviews**. Someone said I might be too old. I'm fifty one and said I should try a different kind of job. They advised me to **retrain**. This **seemed like** a **sensible idea**, so I looked around and found a course **at my local college** where I could train as a teacher. I've just started my second year and I'm really enjoying it. About half of the other students **on the course** are mature students like me. Teaching is so different from the job I was doing before – I **probably won't** earn **as much money as** I did, but I am sure the work will be very **rewarding**.

Woman: I didn't go to university when I left school. I got a job as a doctor's receptionist. After a year, I married and had a family. Now I'm forty two; my children **are grown up** and I'd like to go back to education. I think I will appreciate it more now than I would have done when I was eighteen. I always enjoyed English at school, so **I might study** languages – **I haven't decided yet**. I'd really like to **study medicine**, but it's a very long course and I can't spend all my life studying. If I want to start this year, I have to apply **by the end of next week**. So I must **make up my mind** very quickly.

Man 2: My name's Paul Roberts. I **retired from** my job as a bank manager five years ago and thought I'd enjoy all the extra free time I'd have. For the first two years, I had a great time. My wife and I travelled all over the world. But by then I'd had enough – I needed **a new challenge of some kind**, I needed to be busy again. **Someone** suggested doing a degree course. I thought **they** were joking, but I started looking round for suitable courses. In the end, I **enrolled on a science course with the Open University**. It's a university for people who want to study, but can't leave home for some reason. You can do it at any age - and many Open University students have full-time jobs. It's ideal for me. I can study at home when I want to, using my own computer. **By the time I finish next year, I'll be nearly seventy-two** years old, but it's a really **worthwhile experience**.

Reading :

Lifelong learning

Thirty years ago, most university students believed that when they graduated, their education had finished. They looked for employment and then worked for one employer until they retired. Now students know that they will probably have to change jobs during their working lives. This means they will probably need new skills, and in today's world, lifelong learning helps them to get these.

To remain employable, individuals must be good at the jobs they are doing and predict what skills they may need in the future. Tarek, who works in the finance department of a large company in Assiut, knows that to get a promotion he must improve his computer skills. His company needs highly qualified staff, so it provides courses for its employees, but Tarek is also doing an evening course. Doing his job and studying is hard work, but he knows it is worthwhile.

Nahla Zoheri lives in Damietta and has young children. She has a **BSc** in Information Technology and would like to return to work when her children are older. She hopes to get a Master's degree, but the nearest university with a suitable course is in Cairo. Nahla cannot leave her family, so she wants to study by 'distance learning'. This is when students and teachers are in different places.

Nahla has now enrolled on an M.Sc course and is very happy. All the information she needs is on the internet and her teachers communicate with her by email. In two years' time, Nahla hopes to get her Master's degree after studying in her own home and without leaving her family.

Definitions

enroll	to be or make someone officially a member of a course, school
redundant	no longer employed because there is not enough work
mature	a student at a university or college who is over 25.
retrain	train again to do a different job, learn new skills.
creative	able to invent new and interesting ideas
receptionist	someone whose job is to help people at a hotel, office etc
worthwhile	useful or enjoyable, despite taking a lot of time or effort.
department	one of the parts of a large organization (government, company)
qualified	having qualifications, training, knowledge or skills to do a job
promotion	a move to a better, more responsible position at work
employment	work that you do to earn money
employer	a person or company that pays people to work for them
employee	someone who is paid to work for someone else
employable	having the skills and qualifications that will help you to find work

Language Notes

sensible	حكيم – عاقل	sensitive حساس
-----------------	-------------	-----------------------

Ex: I'm sure Sara will make the right decision. She's a **sensible** woman.
Sara is very **sensitive**. She wouldn't want to hurt anyone.

mature (للشخص الذي يزيد سنه عن 25 سنة)	ناضج	ripe (للنبات كالخضار و الفاكهة)
---	------	--

Ex: I don't think they're mature enough to get married.
These apples aren't quite **ripe** enough to eat.

colleague	زميل	college (جامعية) كلية
------------------	------	------------------------------

Ex: After **high school**, I went to **college**.
I know Mr John very well. He's a **colleague** of mine.

educate	يعلم	bring up يربى
----------------	------	----------------------

Ex: It's not easy to **bring up** young children.
She was **educated** at Cairo University.

provide something for يوفر شيء لـ	provide someone with	يمد شخص بـ
--	-----------------------------	------------

Ex: The government should **provide job opportunities for** young men.
The government should **provide young men with** job opportunities.

information	معلومات (اسم لا يعد و لا يسبقه أداة نكرة و يعامل معاملة المفرد)	
--------------------	---	--

Ex: The information he got is very useful.

expect + مفعول + to + inf.	يتوقع
-----------------------------------	-------

expect + فاعل + will + inf.	يتوقع
------------------------------------	-------

expected + فاعل + would + inf.	يتوقع
---------------------------------------	-------

Ex: We **expect to get** full marks in English.
I expect that **you will be** hungry when you return.
I expected **he would win** the race.

qualify as a teacher / an accountant	■ يتأهل كـ (يأتي بعدها الوظيفة)
qualify in biology / archaeology	■ يحصل علي مؤهل في (تخصص معين)
be qualified to + inf.	■ يكون مؤهل لكي

Ex: He **qualified as** a doctor two years ago.
He **qualified in** medicine last year. She is **qualified to** teach English.

Language Notes

Warning		Responding to warnings
I warn you not to ... Watch out!	You mustn't ... Be careful!	You're right. I'll Don't worry. I will / won't OK, I won't.

☒ **Choose the correct answer:**

- 1- (**Train – Active – Clever – Creative**) means to be able to invent new and interesting ideas.
- 2- To (**drill – enroll – record – agree**) means to become a member of a university course.
- 3- A / An (**employer – employee – redundant – reluctant**) is no longer employable because there is not enough work.
- 4- The (**reception – receiver – receipt – receptionist**) is someone whose job is to help people at a hotel, office etc.
- 5- A (**nature – elder – young – mature**) student is a university or college student who is older than 25.
- 6- To (**try – regain – retrain – trail**) is to train to do something new.
- 7- (**Worthwhile – Worse – Worldwide – World web**) means useful or enjoyable, although you may spend a lot of time, effort or money doing it.
- 8- Salma has always been very (**create – cruel – native – creative**). She will be a very good author.
- 9- I've always wanted to paint – that's why I've (**enrolled – entitled – entered – employed**) on an art course.
- 10- The factory closed and all the workers were made (**redundant – brilliant – smart – alert**).
- 11- My cousin used to be a soldier, but now he's (**retraining – reworking – redoing – rewriting**) to be a teacher.
- 12- Most of the people in my university group are in their twenties, but there are also three (**pure – impure – mature – secure**) students.
- 13- My sister wants to be a teacher. She believes teaching is a (**worthless – meaningless – worthwhile – useless**) career.
- 14- When we arrived at the hotel, the (**receptionist – manager – driver – housekeeping**) gave us the key to our room.
- 15- Someone that pays people to work for them is a / an (**purchaser – employee – employer – employed**).
- 16- A (**document – department – adjustment – argument**) is one of the parts of a large organisation.
- 17- Someone who is paid to work for another person is an (**employ – employer – employee – employment**).
- 18- (**Enrolment – Employment – department – statement**) is work that you do to earn money.
- 19- A (**promotion – pollution – prevention – motion**) is a move to a better job at work.
- 20- To be (**achievable – employable – admirable – available**) is to have the skills and qualifications that will help you to find work.
- 21- My father is a (**qualify – qualifies – qualification – qualified**) engineer.

- 22- To be (**qualified – dignified – falsified – justified**) is to have qualifications for a job.
- 23- The largest company in our town has 600 (**employments – employees – employers – employs**).
- 24- I hope the new skills I'm learning at college will make me more (**employable – unemployed – thinkable – available**).
- 25- My uncle is a teacher in the languages (**division – section – department – part**) at our local school.
- 26- She has worked very hard this year, so she is hoping for a (**demotion – promotion – devotion – communication**) at work next year.
- 27- Everyone likes working for Mr Hamdi. They say he is a very kind (**employer – buyer – player – employee**).
- 28- Most students start looking for (**qualified – promotion – employment – department**) before they leave university.
- 29- A company in my town closed, leaving 50 people (**unused – unemployed – qualified – conscious**).
- 30- The secondary school in our city (**fires – dismisses – allows – employs**) a hundred teachers.
- 31- I hope my company will (**develop – promote – provide – introduce**) me when I finish this course.
- 32- I believe I have the best (**quotations – qualifications – quantities – amounts**) for the job.
- 33- The largest (**employ – employment – employer – employee**) in the city is the car factory.
- 34- For me, a park with trees is the (**ideal – idealist – idealism – idol**) place for a picnic.
- 35- Most southern European countries have a (**alike – unlike – similar – likely**) climate: hot in summer and cold in winter.
- 36- Doing things for other people can be a very (**worthless – meaningless – worthwhile – useless**) experience.
- 37- Universities (**do – provide – make – perform**) the country with highly qualified young people.
- 38- In the modern world, young people must expect (**changing – to changing – change - to change**) employers several times in their working lives.
- 39- I've enjoyed my career in banking, but now I'm looking forward to (**resigning – retiring – retreating – withdrawing**).
- 40- I hope that my employer will give me some training so that I get (**retired – advanced – raised – promoted**) quickly.
- 41- Amin is (**doing – running – making – providing**) an evening course in accountancy, which is paid for by his company.
- 42- I expected he (**would – should – will – must**) pass his exams easily.

- 43- (**Lifelong – Distance – Life – Lifeless**) learning means learning that goes on for life.
- 44- Thanks to information technology, different companies can communicate (**with – to – by – over**) each other as if they were in the same office.
- 45- Nahla wants to keep (**up with – up – out – on**) the latest developments in Information Technology.
- 46- When you are good at your job, you get a (**provision – production – promotion – protection**) quickly.
- 47- (**Involvement – Inclusion – Enrolment – Investment**) at this college will take place in September.
- 48- Self-control is a sign of (**mature – maturity – maturely – amateur**).
- 49- Some people return to education to take educational opportunities he had (**lost – broken – missed – spent**) when he was younger.
- 50- There are many (**similarities – similar – same – likely**) between the two systems.
- 51- The police offered a (**rewarding – awarding – award – reward**) for information that would lead to the arrest of the thieves.
- 52- I cannot believe that it is (**sensible – sensitive – senseless – sense**) to spend so much.
- 53- My brother is doing a course (**in – at – of – with**) the Open University.
- 54- People need to learn new skills during their (**work – job – profession – working**) lives.
- 55- New businesses will (**destroy – employ – enjoy – expand**) a lot of people.
- 56- Uncle's factory needs (**highly – high – higher – height**) qualified workers.
- 57- Their hard work was (**awarded – rewarded – got – congratulated**) by the winning of a five-year contract.
- 58- There has been an increase (**at – in – with – for**) the number of the unemployed people.
- 59- He went back to university to (**give – make – do – take**) up opportunities to learn things he couldn't earlier in his life.
- 60- They have already made up their (**brains – heads – eyes – minds**) where to go for their honeymoon.
- 61- Finding a solution to this problem's one of the greatest (**challenges – forces – changes – faced**) which face scientists today.
- 62- His talents are not fully (**appreciated – tasted – calculated – spread**) in that company.
- 63- He has (**maturity – mature – nature – natural**) beyond his years
- 64- The government is the main (**peeler – porter – provider – publisher**) of school education.
- 65- The school has a system of (**words – worms – rewards – rewords**) and punishments to encourage good behaviour.

- 66- I thought I'd make up (**with – out – in – for**) all the time I couldn't go on holiday due to work.
- 67- My friend should be a writer as he is brilliant at (**doing – acting – telling – making**) up stories.
- 68- In the past nothing was (**annual – manual – auto – mechanized**) as there were no factories.
- 69- My grandmother has spent a lot of time reading since her (**death – rewarding – retirement – birth**).
- 70- Munir couldn't find work as a car mechanic so he is going to (**retrain – return – revise – replace**) as an electrician.

Language Focus

Reported imperatives, Suggestions & Advice

- ◆ **Said to** —→ told / asked / advised / begged / encouraged / reminded / warned (نفي فقط) / threatened / ordered / instructed / pleased

- نستخدم to + inf. في الإثبات و نستخدم not to + inf. في النفي بعد الأفعال السابقة :

- "Open your books." - The teacher told / asked / ordered us to open our books.
- "Don't waste time." - My father advised me not to waste time.
- "Study science at university." - Ali encouraged his friend to study science
- "If I were you, I'd take your coat." My mother advised me to take my coat.

- لا نستخدم المصدر بعد say ولكن نستخدم that ثم جملة خبرية :

- "Don't park there." - The policeman said that we mustn't park there.

- بعد suggest / recommend / insist (on) نستخدم verb + -ing أو that ثم فاعل ثم مصدر أو :should + inf.

- "Do Exercise 2 again." - Leila suggested doing / that I do Exercise 2 again.
- "You should revise quietly." - Ann recommended revising / that I revise quietly.

Choose the correct answer:

- 1- Ahmed is good at football, so we (**encouraged – ordered – warned – threatened**) him to join the school team.
- 2- The tour guide (**encouraged – suggested – warned – said**) the tourists not to go into the desert on their own.
- 3- Maya advised Ola (**to – not to – don't – never**) start revising for the test.
- 4- The teacher (**advised – begged – wondered – ordered**) the students to stop running in the corridor.
- 5- The doctor asked me (**don't – never – too – to**) take off my jacket.
- 6- My friend said " (**not to – to – to not – Don't**) apply for the same kind of job."
- 7- My wife encouraged me (**to – don't – not to – from**) waste time.

- 8- A friend warned me (**to – to not – not to – don't**) apply for the same kind of job.
- 9- He advised me (**to – not to – don't – didn't**) retrain as soon as possible.
- 10- My husband suggested that I (**will study – am going to – shall study – study**) languages.
- 11- The teacher (**say – said – ask – ordered**) us to open our books at page 20.
- 12- My mother recommended that we (**are wearing – should wear – wearing – would wear**) coats.
- 13- My friend (**said – told – inquired – wondered**) me not to sit on the wall.
- 14- The referee (**said – advise – ask – ordered**) the player to stop the game.
- 15- We were hungry, so my father suggested (**going – went – go – to go**) out for lunch.
- 16- The ship's captain ordered the sailors (**work – working – to work – must work**) harder.
- 17- My mother suggested that we (**spend – spending – 'd spend – had spent**) our holiday in Alex
- 18- Mr Zaki ordered us (**start – starting – started – to start**) running round the park.
- 19- Sayed recommended (**to try – tried – trying – that try**) the ice cream.
- 20- My friends suggested (**to go – go – going – went**) to the sports club after school.
- 21- The teacher warned the students (**not to – not – to – don't**) waste time.
- 22- The teacher suggested that (**we do – we are doing – doing – did we do**) the exercise again.
- 23- My father recommended (**visiting – to visit – not to visit – visited**) the citadel.
- 24- He asked the children (**to not – to – not to – too**) talk while eating.
- 25- My father said (**to – that I mustn't – not to – if**) waste my time.

Exercises On Unit 12

2) Read the following passage then answer the questions:

Dear Amal,

In your last email, you told me about your aunt. I am very impressed that she is going to get a degree in law now that her children have left home. You asked me if I knew **anyone else** who had studied when they were older. I don't know anyone, but I heard about an amazing woman in a report on the radio. The report said that a woman had started primary school at the age of 90! The woman, whose name is Priscilla Sitienei, lives in a rural village in Kenya. When she was younger, she was not able to go to school. She worked for 65 years as a nurse. Although she was good at her job, she never learned to read or write.

In 2003, the government of Kenya said that primary school would be free for everyone for the first time. Priscilla wanted to learn to read and write and decided to go primary school with six of her great-great-grandchildren. She said that it was never too late to learn new skills and she wanted to inspire other adults to do the same. Now she is learning maths, English and PE. She wears the same blue and green uniform as her fellow pupils. The head teacher of the school said that Priscilla was loved by every pupil and that they all wanted to learn and play with her. At break, she tells the other pupils about the customs that she grew up with. At the end of the report, Priscilla said that she wanted to tell the world's children that with education, they could be whatever they wanted. She is certainly a remarkable woman!

Best wishes,
Azza

A) Choose the correct answer :

1- Why is Azza impressed by Amal's aunt?

- a) She has a university degree.
- b) Her children have left home.
- c) She is learning to read.
- d) She is studying for a degree.

2- What does Priscilla hope to achieve, as well as learning at school?

- a) She wants a new job.
- b) She wants pupils to inspire her.
- c) She wants to inspire children to learn.
- d) She wants to write a book.

3- Why do you think Priscilla did not go to primary school when she was a child?

- a) There weren't any primary schools.
- b) Her family could not pay for her education.
- c) She did not want to learn.
- d) She started working as a nurse.

4- What is the main idea of the text?

- a) It is never too late to learn.
- b) Old people must go to school.
- c) Old people should go to school.
- d) Nurses can get different jobs.

5- What do the underlined words anyone else refer to?

- a) any other people
- b) any aunts
- c) any
- d) any relatives

6- What do you think the word remarkable means?

- a) very old
- b) very kind
- c) very clever
- d) unusual in a way that is surprising

B) Answer the following questions :

7- Why did Azza tell Amal about Priscilla Sitienei?

8- What does Priscilla Sitienei study at school?

9- Do you think Priscilla will be able to use the skills she learns at school? Why?

10- How did Azza know about Priscilla Sitienei?

4) Finish the following dialogue:

Ahmed is asking his teacher for advice on the best way to study English.

Ahmed : Good morning, sir. Can I ask you a few questions about how to study English?

Teacher : With pleasure. Go on!

Ahmed : 1).....?

Teacher : The first thing you should do to start studying English efficiently is to read simple texts.

Ahmed : 2).....?

Teacher : In this case, you will have to guess the meaning of the new vocabulary.

Ahmed : What if I can't guess their meaning?

Teacher : 3).....

Ahmed : I can't do that. I've never used a dictionary.

Teacher : 4).....?

Ahmed : Yes, I have received it among the school books, but it's been on the shelf at home since then.

Teacher : 5).....

Ahmed : Really! Thank you very much sir. I appreciate your offer to help me with it. 6).....

Teacher : Don't worry. It won't take too long to be able to use it.

5) Write a paragraph of (120) words on ONE of the following:

a) Lifelong Learning

b) Distance Learning

6) A) Translate into Arabic:

1- Education is important, whether it helps people to get a good job or not.

2- The organisation I work for should retrain me if I need new skills.

3- 'Distance learning' is when students and teachers are in different places.

4- I enrolled on a science course with the Open University.

5- The Open University is a university for people who want to study, but can't leave home for some reason.

6- Education should be directed towards fulfilling the needs of society.

B) Translate ONE (1) sentence only into English:

1- هل سبق أن أرسلت سيرتك الذاتية الى شركة أجنبية؟

2- أخبرني علاء أنه كان دائماً عاملاً مجتهداً لذلك فهو مؤهل لهذه الوظيفة.

3- تبذل الحكومة ما بوسعها للتحكم في الأسعار ورفع مستوي المعيشة.

4- الغذاء الصحي ضروري لتجنب الإصابة بكثير من الأمراض.

5- يعتبر التعلم مدى الحياة من المفاهيم الجديدة التي تهدف الى تنمية مهارات العمل لدي الافراد.

6- توفير فرص العمل ليس مسؤولية الدولة فقط بل هو عمل مشترك بين القطاع الخاص والعام.

Unit 13: Festivals and Folk Music

Key Vocabulary

depend on	يعتمد على	instrument	آلة / أداة
fireworks	ألعاب نارية	region	منطقة / إقليم
harvest	حصاد / محصول / يحصد	musical	موسيقى
procession	موكب	event	حدث (هام)
sculptures	تماثيل منحوتة	celebrate	يحتفل بـ
local community	مجتمع محلي	folk	شعبي (موسيقى وأغاني شعبية)
distinctive	مُمَيِّز (واضح)	responsibility (duty)	مسئولية (واجب)
evolve	يتطور / يتطور	vary (differ)	يتنوع (يختلف)
landmark	مَعْلَم هام	position	وضع / مكان / مكانة
mark (v/n)	يُمثل / يحدد / علامة	entertainment	ترفيه

Vocabulary

cultures	ثقافات	festival	مهرجان
concert	حفل موسيقى	open air	الهواء الطلق
fortnight	اسبوعين	relatives	أقارب
individual	فرد / فردي	relation	علاقة
drum	طبل / يدق الطبول	benefits	فوائد
drumstick	عصا النقر علي الطبل	charitable	خيرى
drummer	طبال	model	نموذج
hit / bang drums	يدق / يقرع الطبول	inspire	يلهم / يوحى
traditions	تقاليد	carnival	كرنفال
traditional music	موسيقى تقليدية	line	صف (من الناس)
special occasion	مناسبة خاصة	stressed	مُجهَد / مُنهك
special purpose	غرض خاص	local church	كنيسة محلية
historical events	أحداث تاريخية	family members	أعضاء الأسرة
unusual	غير معتاد	professional musician	موسيقيار محترف
the oud / lute	العود	particular style	أسلوب / نمط محدد
the violin	الكمان	Upper Egypt	صعيد مصر
violinist	عازف الكمان	the same day	نفس اليوم
rababa	آلة الربابة	relieve	يخفف
simsimiyya	آلة السمسمية	disappear	يختفي
feast	عيد	disappearance	أختفاء
unlike	بخلاف / على عكس	reflect	يعكس
explosives	متفجرات	signals	علامات
health problems	مشاكل صحية	audience	جمهور

Prepositions and Expressions

give away	يوهب / يهدي / يتنازل عن	write down music	يُدون الموسيقى
give off	يطرد / يتصاعد منه / يسرب	Be written for	تُكتب من أجل
give out	يوزع / يُخرج	make up songs	يؤلف أغاني
give up	يتخلي عن / يستسلم	evolve into	يتطور الى
achieve a goal	يحقق هدف (في الحياة)	cheer up	يبتهج - يبهج
score a goal	يسجل هدف (في مرمى)	access to	مدخل لـ / معرفة بـ
throughout the world	في أنحاء العالم	pass from ... to	ينتقل من ..إلى..
responsible for	مسئول عن	compare ... to ...	يقارن ... بـ ...
It's our responsibility to	إنها مسئوليتنا أن	vary from ... to ...	يختلف من ... إلى... ..
get through work	ينجز العمل	different from	مختلف عن
sing ... to sleep	يغني لـ ... لينام	distinctive from	مميز عن
make sculptures	يصنع تماثيل	popular with	محبوب لدى
mark the beginning of	يُمثل بداية ..	Be influenced by	متأثراً بـ
play (on) an instrument	يعزف علي آلة	with this in mind	بوضع هذا في الاعتبار
a work of art	عمل فني	have his own style	له أسلوبه الخاص

Antonyms

distinctive	مُمَيِّز (واضح ومحدد)	common	عادي / شائع
responsible	مسئول	irresponsible	غير مسئول
eventful	حافل بالأحداث	uneventful	لم يقع به ما يجدر ذكره
traditional	تقليدي	modern	حديث
loud	مرتفع / عالي	soft / quiet	هادئ
lifeless	ميت / بلا حياة	alive	حي
local	محلي	global	عالمي
written	كتابي / مُدون	oral / verbal	لفظي / شفهي

Derivatives

Verb	Noun	Adjective
celebrate	احتفال celebration	مشهور celebrated
vary (varies)	أحد المشاهير celebrity	متنوع / مختلف various
evolve	تنوع / مجموعة متنوعة variety	تطوري evolutionary
distinct	التطور evolution	مميز distinctive
describe	تمييز / تفريق distinction	وصفي descriptive
practise	وصف description	عملي practical
explode	ممارسة / مزاولة practice	متفجر explosive
	انفجار explosion	

Words go together

a historical play	مسرحية تاريخية	develop techniques	يُطور اساليب
fine music	موسيقى راقية	family planning	تنظيم الأسرة
irresponsible behaviour	سلوك غير مسنول	birth rate	معدل المواليد
population explosion	الانفجار السكاني	death rate	معدل الوفيات
music therapy	العلاج بالموسيقى	mental age	العمر العقلي

Read the following carefully

Listening :

Nabila: I'm looking forward to doing more on this project on festivals in different cultures. My English friend, Tanya, is staying with me and can help us.

Nahla: Hi Tanya, that's great. Nearly all cultures celebrate a good harvest because it means they'll have food for the next year.

Nabila: They're probably the oldest type of festivals, aren't they, Tanya?

Tanya: Yes, they are. In England, most towns and Villages have harvest festivals. People take fruit and vegetables to their local church. After the festival, these are given out to the poor.

Nabila: I know that some cultures have special winter festivals, don't they?

Nahla: Yes, like the Sapporo Snow Festival in Japan. How about looking at that festival for our project?

Tanya: Good idea. What happens there?

Nabila: Well, it isn't an old festival. It began in 1950 when some students decided to make snow sculptures in a park in Sapporo - that's the capital of Hokkaido, Japan's second largest island. Now it's one of Japan's largest winter festivals. Every year, for seven days in February, thousands of people enjoy looking at the sculptures which may be famous landmarks, like the Sphinx, or enormous models of well-known buildings.

Tanya: Really? That's very unusual.

Nahla: In China, they have a big festival in winter, too. I'd like to do something on this for our project. Chinese New Year's the most important day of the year.

Nabila: When do they celebrate that?

Nahla: It isn't the same day every year.

Tanya: Why's that?

Nahla: It depends on the position of the moon, but it's always between the 21st of January and the 19th of February. I remember watching a TV programme about it.

Nabila: How do people celebrate?

Nahla: Well, before the holiday, they clean their homes and buy new clothes. Then, people visit their relatives and give presents on the day after New Year's

Day. There's a big procession, there's loud drum music and there are fireworks.

Nabila: That sounds really interesting. Chinese people all over the world celebrate this, don't they?

Tanya: What about doing something on an Egyptian festival?

Nahla: We have **Sham El-Nessim**, It's a festival to mark the beginning of spring.

Tanya: What happens?

Nabila: It's mainly a day when families spend the day together, usually in the open air. We have a meal of fish with eggs and green onions.

Tanya: I really want to see one of these festivals. Many of them have interesting music, too.

Nabila: You should ask your parents to take you.

Tanya: Yes, I'll suggest going to the Sham El-Nessim festival in Egypt next year.

Reading :

Folk Music

In the same way that cultures have their own festivals, they also have their own traditional folk music: a particular style of music that uses different instruments.

Unlike other kinds of music, folk music usually develops in local communities. Even in one country, different areas, cities and villages often have their own distinctive styles. For example, the traditional music of Cairo is different from the music of other parts of Egypt. Distinctive styles developed because, in the past, most people were born and lived their lives in one village or one small area. Music was individual, not influenced by music from other areas.

Today, most modern music is written for entertainment. Most folk music, however, has a special purpose. Folk songs, for example, were made up to describe important historical events, to help people get through their day's work, or to sing babies to sleep. Until recent times, folk music was not written down. Children learnt it from their families, friends or neighbours.

The musical instruments used in folk also vary from place to place. The people of Upper Egypt, for example, often play the rababah, an instrument like a violin; the simsimiyya is the instrument of the Suez area. The oud is common in the folk music of Cairo. It was taken to Europe, where it evolved into a number of modern instruments.

Today, travel and modern technology have made it possible for anyone to listen to music not just from other areas, but from other cultures around the world. Because of this, distinctive folk music could disappear in future. With this in mind, it is our responsibility to do everything we can to protect the traditional music of our countries, our regions and our communities.

Definitions

depend on	change according to something else
sculpture	a work of art made from stone, wood etc
fireworks	small objects that explode or burn with a coloured light
procession	a line of people moving slowly as part of a festival or event
harvest	the time when crops are taken from the fields
landmark	a famous building that helps you recognise where you are
musical	relating to music
instrument	a small tool used by scientists, doctors or a thing producing music
distinctive	showing a person or thing to be different from others
evolve	to develop or make something develop gradually
folk	traditional and typical of the ordinary people in a particular area
responsibility	your duty to make sure that a thing is done
vary	to be different from other types of the same thing
community	a small area or town and the people who live in it
entertainment	a performance or show
region	a large area in a country

Language Notes

landmark	معلم هام	landscape	منظر طبيعي
-----------------	----------	------------------	------------

Ex: The Sphinx and Taj Mahal are famous **landmarks** in Egypt and India.
The **landscape** along the banks of the Nile is very beautiful.

distinctive	مميز / واضح	distinguished	متميز / بارز / شهير
--------------------	-------------	----------------------	---------------------

Ex: Mona's voice is very **distinctive**. I can recognise easily.
I'm pleased to welcome our **distinguished** guests to the conference.

statue	تمثال قديم لإنسان أو حيوان	sculpture	تمثال حديث يمثل فن النحت
---------------	----------------------------	------------------	--------------------------

Ex: Look at this wonderful **sculpture**. It's made by a well-known artist.
People who visit Egypt are always eager to see the ancient **statues**.

snow	التلج (قطرات الماء المتجمدة التي تسقط من السماء)
ice	التلج أو الجليد (الماء عندما يتجمد ويصبح تلجا)

Ex: Outside the **snow** began to fall. Would you like **ice** in your juice?

keen on + v. + ing	مولع بـ / مغرم بـ
---------------------------	-------------------

Ex: I'm not **keen on going** to the cinema.

unlike	على العكس من
---------------	--------------

Ex: **Unlike** his father, he doesn't like music.

responsible for	مسئول عن	Fathers are responsible for their children.
responsible of	مسئول من	Children are responsible of their fathers.
responsible to	مسئول أمام	He is responsible to the minister.

- يأتي بعد **suggest / insist on / recommend** فعل ينتهي بـ **ing** أو **that** وبعدها فاعل
ثم **inf.** أو **should + inf.**

Ex: He suggested going / that we should go for a drink.

و كذلك المفرد الغائب بعده مصدر He suggested that we go for a drink.

Spot the Difference

evolution	تطور تدريجي	revolution	ثورة
region	منطقة / إقليم	religion	دين
event	حدث / مناسبة	incident	حدث عارض (في فيلم)
traditional	تقليدي (موروث وقديم)	conventional	تقليدي (سائد الآن)
historic	مهم / له أهمية بسبب قدمه	historical	تاريخي (له علاقة بالتاريخ)
musician	موسيقيار (عازف موسيقي)	composer	ملحن (مؤلف موسيقي)
special	خاص (مميز عن غيره)	private	خاص (مملوك لشخص أو أكثر)
society	مجتمع (قومي - دولي)	community	مجتمع (محلي - جزء من دولة)

Language Functions

Making suggestions		Respond to suggestions	
How / What about + -ing...?		That's a good idea.	Sorry, I don't agree.
Shall we ...	Let's say ...	That's what I think.	I'm not sure about that.
We could ...	Why don't we...?	I'd go with that.	Sorry, I am busy.

Choose the correct answer:

- (Steelworks – Masterworks – Networks – Fireworks) are small objects that explode or bum with a coloured light.
- (Sculpture – Culture – Lecture – Mixture) is a work of art made from stone, wood ... etc.
- A (road – row – procession – queue) is a line of people moving slowly as part of a ceremony.
- To (focus on – insist on – put on – depend on) is to change according to something else.
- (Harvest – Invest – Plant – Growing) is the time when crops are taken from the fields.
- A (landmark – landfill – landlady – landscape) is something that helps you recognise where you are, such as a famous building.
- (Landmarks – Drums – Celebrations – Fireworks) can be very dangerous, so they shouldn't be given to young children.

- 8- The weather was very good this year, so the farmer is hoping for a very good (**harvest – festival – fireworks – evolution**).
- 9- The Eiffel Tower in Paris is one of the world's most famous (**landmines – landmarks – marks – landslides**).
- 10- My uncle is an artist and often makes (**purposes – landmarks – fireworks – sculptures**) from wood.
- 11- Your exam results will (**depend on – rely on – lie on – go on**) how hard you study for them.
- 12- A (**process – project – procession – person**) of about twenty thousand people moved slowly towards the king's palace.
- 13- The shop is giving (**up – in – out – away**) a pen with each book that you buy.
- 14- The explorers tried to climb the mountain, but (**gave up – gave out – gave off – gave away**) when they realised it was dangerous.
- 15- The teacher asked me to (**give up – give out – give off – give away**) a test paper to each student in the class.
- 16- That old car is giving (**off – up – in – out**) a lot of smoke.
- 17- People often use traditional musical instruments to play (**fake – fort – fork – folk**) music.
- 18- Tarek's exam results (**very – vary – various – variety**). Sometimes they are very good, but sometimes they are bad.
- 19- Fatma's voice is very (**nice – sweet – good – distinctive**). I know when she talks to someone!
- 20- Mobile phones (**revolve – distinguish – solve – evolve**) all the time. They were large, then very small.
- 21- When Ahmed's parents go out, it is his (**responsible – distinction – responsibility – distinctive**) to look after his younger brothers and sisters.
- 22- The tourists wanted to eat interesting food from the (**region – position – event – cinema**) they were travelling through.
- 23- Young people are (**irresponsible – responsible – desirable – admirable**) for protecting their country's folk music.
- 24- It is (**advisable – desirable – admirable – irresponsible**) to drive dangerously especially in towns or cities.
- 25- The (**evolution – evaluation – resolution – distribution**) of the internet has taken place over the last twenty years.
- 26- Our local university offers a (**varied – variety – various – variable**) of language courses.
- 27- You can buy this shirt in (**various – variation – difference – changed**) colours.
- 28- I don't understand the (**plan – suggestion – distinction – direction**) between who and which.
- 29- Tarek is a very good (**violin – piano – oud – violinist**).
- 30- After the festival, food and drink are given (**off – up – out – in**) to the poor.

- 31- Cultures have their own festivals and (**regions – styles – tools – landmarks**) of music.
- 32- The musical instruments used in folk music (**compare – different – various – vary**) from place to place.
- 33- The oud was taken to Europe, where it (**evolved – revolved – recovered – disappeared**) into a number of modern instruments.
- 34- One of the (**revolutions – evolutions – purposes – discoveries**) of folk music has been to help people to work.
- 35- Today, most modern music is written for (**entertainment – enrolment – instrument – development**).
- 36- It is our (**responsible – irresponsibility – responsibility – immobility**) to do everything we can to protect the traditional music of our country.
- 37- The fire gave (**off – up – out – away**) a lot of heat.
- 38- The children gave (**off – up – out – away**) their toys for a charity.
- 39- I tried the puzzle but gave (**off – up – out – in**), as it was too difficult.
- 40- If things of the same type (**agree – vary – meet – demand**), they are all different from each other.
- 41- To (**revolve – involve – revolt – evolve**) means to develop or make something develop gradually.
- 42- A (**drum – violin – piano – guitar**) is a round musical instrument, which you play by hitting it with your hand or a stick.
- 43- Jack and Lilly (**calculated – cancelled – celebrated – captured**) their 50th anniversary with a large party for all their family and friends.
- 44- We scored a goal because the other team's goalkeeper was in the wrong (**position – procession – landmark – mark**).
- 45- There are (**sculptures – fireworks – celebrations – processions**) of kings and queens in the temples of Luxor.
- 46- An interesting winter (**deliberation – determination – celebration – celebrate**) is the Sapporo Festival in Japan.
- 47- Sham El-Nessim is a festival which (**manors – celebrates – marks – serves**) the beginning of Spring.
- 48- Food is gathered in from the fields during the (**production – consumption – harvest – planting**) season.
- 49- The Chinese hit (**gums – pianos – guitars – drums**) on New Year's Day to frighten evil spirits.
- 50- Pop music is a style of music that is (**favourable – popular – public – uncommon**) with teenagers.
- 51- Over the years, most folk music have been made up to help people get (**up – through – into – out of**) their work.
- 52- Western classical music is still enjoyed today by audiences from different (**authorities – powers – cultures – worlds**).

- 53- A (**dreamer – hammer – mourner – drummer**) is someone who hits drums.
- 54- Van Gogh, perhaps Holland's most (**calculated – cancelled – celebrated – celebrity**) artist, died in poverty.
- 55- He became a sporting (**celebrity – ability – activity – celebrated**) after winning the gold medal.
- 56- The concert was a charitable (**accident – condition – event – incident**) to collect money for the poor.
- 57- The guitar is a musical (**machine – device – instrument – technique**).
- 58- Whatever you think of shawki's poetry, it's certainly (**distinctive – addictive – additive – attentive**).
- 59- The Chinese New Year (**festival – capital – classical – funeral**) takes place between the 21st of January and the 19th of February.
- 60- Folk music usually develops in (**international – global – coastal – local**) communities.
- 61- Folk music is a particular (**style – function – bunch – quantity**) of music that uses different instruments.
- 62- Our progress (**depends on – insists on – persists in – keen on**) our sincere work.
- 63- As medical knowledge (**evolves – develop – promotion – revolves**), beliefs change.
- 64- The shop that has just opened is giving (**up – off – away – in**) free tea or coffee today. We should go.
- 65- They should give (**up – out – away – off**) their bad habits .
- 66- The discovery of penicillin was a (**landmark – grade – degree – land**) in the history of medicine.
- 67- The castle occupies a strategic (**post – portion – position – petition**), overlooking the valley.
- 68- They (**dried – believed – served – evolved**) a new system to run the factory.
- 69- Thousands of people went out to the streets to (**bark – dark – shark – mark**) the occasion.
- 70- Most folk music has a special (**purpose – propose – proposal – position**).
- 71- His opinion was supported by (**historian – hysterical – historical – historic**) facts.
- 72- Some (**celebrations – celebrated – celebrities – celebrates**) were interviewed on TV last night.
- 73- The government provided a / an (**original – special – private – national**) training for tourist guides.
- 74- The Egyptian (**community – society – region – district**) in America is so large.
- 75- The twins have (**involved – solved – resolved – evolved**) a language of their own.

Language Focus

1- أفعال يأتى بعدها to + inf. فقط :

agree	يوافق	intend	ينوى	deserve	يستحق
arrange	يرتب	threaten	يهدد	afford	يتحمل
decide	يقرر	want	يريد	tend	يميل
wish	يرغب	demand	يطلب	manage	يتمكن
expect	يتوقع	prepare	يستعد	attempt	يحاول
hope	يأمل	seek	يسعى	long	يشتاق
learn	يتعلم	refuse	يرفض	dare	يجرؤ
offer	يعرض	seem	يبدو	hesitate	يتردد
plan	يخطط	pretend	يتظاهر	sweat	يقسم
promise	يعد	cause	يسبب	mean	يقصد

Ex: Everyone **agreed to meet** at the airport.

I **learnt to swim** when I was three years old.

What do you **plan to do** in the summer?

2- أفعال يأتى بعدها فعل مضاف له ing فقط :

admit	يعترف	involve	يتضمن	quit	يتوقف عن
avoid	يتجنب	consider	يفكر في	prevent	يمنع من
mind	يمانع	put off	يؤجل	resist	يقاوم
enjoy	يستمتع	delay	يؤخر	appreciate	يقدر
finish	ينهي	postpone	يؤجل	miss	يفتقد
practise	يمارس	include	يشمل	propose	يفرض
suggest	يقترح	risk	يخطر	adore	يعشق
fancy	يتخيل	imagine	يتخيل	anticipate	يتوقع
deny	ينكر	can't help			لا يستطيع أن يمنع نفسه من

Ex: He **admitted borrowing** my pen without asking me.

Musicians **practise playing** their instruments for many hours a day.

3- أفعال يأتى بعدها to + inf. فى الخاص أو فعل مضاف له ing فى العام :

hate / dislike	يكره	like	يحب
love	يحب	prefer	يفضل
begin / start	يبدأ	continue	يستمر فى

Ex: I **hate getting** water in my eyes. This hurts them. (بصفة عامة (عادة أو حقيقة)

She **loves to cook** for her family this week. (حالة خاصة لمرة واحدة (اسبوع واحد)

- لاحظ : إذا استخدمنا **would** قبل **like / hate / love / prefer** يليها **to + inf.** فقط :

Ex: I'd like to finish my work early today. I'd prefer to drink coffee.

4- أفعال يأتى بعدها **to + inf.** اذا سبقت مابعدھا في الحدوث (لم يحدث) أو فعل مضاف له **ing** اذا سبقھا ما بعدها في الحدوث (حدث) :

stop	يتوقف	forget	ينسى
remember	يتذكر	regret	يأسف / يندم
try	يحاول		

- **remember + to + مصدر** : يتذكر ثم يقوم بعمل شيء ما
- He **remembered to see** the man.
= He remembered, and then saw the man.
- **remember + v. + ing** : يقوم بعمل شيء ثم يتذكر أنه فعله
- He **remembered seeing** the man.
= First, he saw the man, then he remembered.

- **forget + to + مصدر** : ينسى أن يفعل شيئاً
- Nadia **forgot to meet** the customer. = She didn't meet the customer.
- **forget + v. + ing** : يفعل شيء ثم ينسى أنه فعله
- She **forgot meeting** the customer. = She met him but couldn't remember.

- **regret + to + مصدر** : يشعر بالأسف لأنه من الضروري أن يفعل شيئاً
- He **regretted to say** that my brother had an accident.
= He was sorry that it was necessary to say it.
- **regret + v. + ing** : يشعر بالندم لأنه فعل شيئاً **أو لم يفعله**
- He **regretted saying** that my brother had an accident.
= He was sorry that he had said it.

- **try + to + مصدر** : يحاول عمل شيء و غالباً لا ينجح
- He **tried to climb** the tree but he couldn't. = He failed to climb the tree.
- **try + v. + ing** : يحاول عمل شيء و غالباً ينجح / **يقوم بعمل شيء ليرى نتيجته**
- He **tried climbing** the tree and did it. = He succeeded in climbing the tree.
- A: I have a bad headache.
B: **Try taking** an aspirin. = Take an aspirin and see the result.

- **stop + to + مصدر** : يتوقف لكي يفعل شيئاً
- He **stopped to read** his paper.
= He stopped what he was doing to read the paper.
- **stop + v. + ing** : يتوقف عن عمل شيء
- He **stopped reading** his paper.
= He had read what he wanted to read.

5- استخدام v + ing بعد to كجزء من هذه التعبيرات :

take to	يعتاد على	object to	يعترض
be / get used to	معتاد على	look forward to	يتطلع إلي
be accustomed to	معتاد على	due to	بسبب
prefer to ...	يفضل على ...	in addition to	بالإضافة إلى
own up to	يعترف بـ	contribute to	يسهم في
lead to	يؤدي إلى	be opposed to	معارض لـ
devote to	يُكرس لـ	be exposed to	يكون عُرضة لـ
owing to	بسبب	thanks to	بفضل

Ex: He is used to getting up early.

6- استخدام فعل مضاف له ing بعد هذه التعبيرات :

be busy	مشغول	Be worth	يستحق
have difficulty (in)	يجد صعوبة في	It's a waste of money	مضيعة للمال
It's no good = It's no use	لا فائدة من	It's a waste of time	مضيعة للوقت
There is no point in	لا فائدة من	feel like	يود / يريد
How about	ما رأيك في	It's fun	إنه لمتعة
What about	ما رأيك في	don't mind	لا يمانع
can't stand / bear	لا يحتمل	Would / Do you mind	هل تمانع
can't help	ليس بيدي / ليس بوسعي	can't deny	لا أنكر

Ex: She has difficulty (in) breathing. I feel like having a cold drink.

It's a waste of money buying that house.

- ملحوظة هامة : عندما تعني كلمة to " لكي " يتبعها المصدر فقط :

Ex: I study hard to get good marks.

Choose the correct answer:

- 1- When the children stopped (singing – to sing – sung – sang), everyone clapped. They liked the song very much.
- 2- They expect thousands of people (visiting – visited – to visit – visits) Sapporo for the Snow Festival next year.
- 3- My brother is learning (playing – play – plays – to play) the oud.
- 4- If I were you, I'd avoid (travelling – to travel – travels – travel) into the city during the festival.
- 5- My parents suggested (go – to go – goes – going) to the theatre.
- 6- I really want (going – go – to go – went) to Hong Kong for the New Year.
- 7- Before you go to London, you should practise (speak – to speak – spoken – speaking) English.

- 8- He hopes (**to win – winning – wins – won**) a prize for his schoolwork.
- 9- I regret (**to go – goes – going – gone**) to the cinema. It wasn't a good film.
- 10- She offered (**taking – to taking – to take – taken**) me to the station in her car.
- 11- We've just finished (**watching – to watch – watches – watched**) a TV programme about Egyptian history.
- 12- When did you decide (**study – studying – to study – studied**) biology?
- 13- We've arranged (**to pick – pick – picking – picked**) Hani up from the airport.
- 14- Ali is planning (**spending – spend – to spend**) all weekend revising for next week's maths test.
- 15- Their teacher is used (**help – helping – to helping – to help**) students with their homework.
- 16- On my first day at school, I remember going into the classroom and (**see – saw – to see – seeing**) my teacher.
- 17- If you can't remember an English word, try (**looking – to look – to looking – look**) it up in a dictionary.
- 18- I'm looking forward (**to do – doing – to doing – do**) more on this project.
- 19- How about (**to look – looking – to looking – look**) at that festival for our project?
- 20- I'd like (**to do – do – did – doing**) something on this for our project.
- 21- I remember (**watch – watching – to watch – to watching**) a TV programme about it.
- 22- I really want (**see – saw – seeing – to see**) one of these festivals.
- 23- I'll suggest (**going – to going – go – to go**) to the Sham El-Nessim festival in Egypt next year.
- 24- Leila stopped (**to listen – listening – listened – to listening**) to the radio when she had heard a loud knock on the door.
- 25- I'll never forget (**found – to find – finding – founded**) that rare old coin in the garden. I was only 12 then.
- 26- She was doing exercise, then she stopped (**listening – to listen – listened – listen**) to the radio.
- 27- I remember (**phoning – to phone – phoned – phones**) my cousin in America a month ago. He told me a lot about his stay there.
- 28- Did you remember (**posted – post – to post – posting**) my letter? - Oh, I completely forgot.
- 29- I have always regretted (**not having – not to have – have – not have**) studied harder at school.
- 30- The band stopped (**to play – playing – play – played**); there was silence.
- 31- She agreed (**write – to write – writing – wrote**) an article on classical music.
- 32- Henry shouldn't risk (**to drive – drive – driving – drove**) so fast.
- 33- I hate (**to sit – sitting – to sitting – sit**) doing nothing - I'd rather be working.
- 34- Don't forget (**locking – lock – locked – to lock**) the door when you leave.

- 35- British Airways regret (**to announce – announcing – to announcing – announce**) the cancellation of flight BA205 to Madrid.
- 36- I (**deny – dislike – regret – miss**) leaving early yesterday. I wish I had stayed to meet you.
- 37- Mona promised (**she comes – to come – coming – will come**) and she usually keeps her promises.
- 38- I can't stand (**to listen – listen – listening – to listening**) to him.
- 39- He stopped (**write – to write – written – writing**) and put down his pen.
- 40- I tried (**stop – to stop – stopping – stopped**) him, but he had already left.
- 41- The thief got into the house because I forgot (**closing – closed – to close – to closing**) the window.
- 42- He regretted (**leaving – to leave – left – leaves**) his job as he couldn't find another one.
- 43- She couldn't help (**to cry – cries – cry – crying**) aloud the moment she saw the accident.
- 44- She deserved (**win – winning – to win – won**) the first prize.
- 45- Do you enjoy (**listen – to listen – listening – listened**) to music?
- 46- He began (**to play – plays – played – playing**) the guitar when the phone rang.
- 47- He began (**playing – to play – plays – played**) the guitar when he was six.
- 48- Would you mind (**to lend – lends – lending – lent**) me this CD?
- 49- Do you regret (**to go – goes – going – went**) to the concert?
- 50- I've decided (**learn – to learn – learning – learned**) the piano.
- 51- He is considering (**to go – to going – of going – going**) to London this year.
- 52- He refused (**answer – to answer – answering – for answer**) my questions.
- 53- The salesman denied (**taking – to take – takes – take**) money from the lady.
- 54- I regretted (**criticize – to criticize – criticizing – to criticizing**) her in public.
- 55- When they came to a cafeteria, they stopped (**eating – to eat – to eating – to be eaten**).
- 56- I don't fancy (**watch – watched – watches – watching**) that film. There is a lot of violence in it.
- 57- He wanted the money (**for pay – to pay – pay – paying**) for his son's education.
- 58- His parents warned him (**not leaving – not left – not to be left – not to leave**) university without a getting a degree.
- 59- She's training hard (**won – winning – to win – of winning**) the race.
- 60- The programme presenter asked Dr. Carter (**talk – talking – to talk – talked**) about Steinbeck's early life.
- 61- Leila asked Mona whether she could help her (**do – to doing – done – to be done**) the shopping.
- 62- I recommend (**to write – writing – written – write**) your feelings down on paper.

- 63- She was really pleased (**seen – seeing – see – to see**) her old friend.
- 64- The driver of the car (**avoided – planned – offered – hoped**) hitting the boy.
- 65- I've tried (**reading – with reading – to read – reads**) that book, but I don't understand it.
- 66- What do you (**avoid – plan – finish – practice**) to do in the summer?
- 67- She offered (**helping – help – to help – helped**) her mother prepare lunch.
- 68- They expect thousands of people (**visiting – visited – to visit – visits**) Sapporo for the Snow Festival
- 69- My brother is learning (**playing – play – plays – to play**) the oud.
- 70- Musicians practise (**to play – playing – played – play**) their instruments for hours a day.

Exercises on Unit 13

2) Read the passage then answer the questions:

Today, millions of people want to learn or improve their English but it is difficult to find the best method. Is it better to study in Britain or America or to study in your own country? The advantages of going to Britain seem obvious. Firstly, you will be able to listen to the language all the time you are in the country. You will be surrounded completely by the language wherever you go. Another advantage is that you've to speak the language if you are with other people. In Egypt, it's always possible, in the class, to speak Arabic if you want to and the learning is slower.

On the other hand, there are also advantages to staying at home to study. You don't have to make big changes to your life. As well as this, it is also a lot cheaper than going to Britain but it is never possible to achieve the results of living in the UK. If you have a good teacher in Egypt, I think you can learn in a more concentrated way than being in Britain without going to a school.

So, in conclusion, I think that if you have enough time and enough money, the best choice is to spend some time in the UK. This is simply not possible for most people, so being here in Egypt is the only **viable** option. The most important thing to do in this situation is to maximize your opportunities: to speak only English in class and to try to use English whenever possible outside the class.

A) Choose the correct answer:

- 1- The underlined word "viable" means
- a) difficult b) cheap c) applicable d) old-fashioned
- 2- This text is mainly about how to
- a) adapt to life in the UK b) travel easily from the UK to the USA
c) use English in real situations d) improve English using any method
- 3- According to the text, going to Britain gives you an opportunity to
- a) be exposed to English all the time b) use English whenever possible in class
c) pay less money to acquire language d) gain the American and British accent

- 4- According to the text, staying in Egypt gives you the opportunity to
- a) earn more money through teaching b) achieve the results of living in the UK
c) keep your lifestyle while learning English d) make big changes to your life
- 5- According to the text, to spend some time in the UK you must
- a) maximize your opportunities b) speak only English in class
c) have the strong will to do so d) be able to afford the expenses
- 6- The writer thinks that it's still a good option to stay home because you
- a) don't have to go to school b) you can speak Arabic in class
c) you can achieve the results of living in the UK d) you can find a good teacher

B) Answer the following questions:

- 7- According to the text, what is one of the challenges learners of English face?
8- Why do you think learning English in Egypt is slow?
9- In your opinion, which of the two options offered by the writer is better? Why?
10- What are two disadvantages of traveling to Britain to improve English?

4) Finish the following dialogue:

Munir is going with Wagdy to his grandfather's house.

Munir : What did you promise your mother before we left?

Wagdy :

Munir : I'll help you tidy your grandfather's house.?

Wagdy : We can't tidy his bedroom as he is sleeping.

Munir : OK.

Wagdy : Yes, let's start in the kitchen. That's a good idea.

Munir : After that

Wagdy : The setting room will take much time.

Munir : When he gets up, we

5) Write a paragraph of (120) words on ONE of the following:

- 1- "A job that you would like to do after you graduate".
2- The effect of music on People's lives.

6) A) Translate into Arabic:

- 1- The 20th century will be remembered for its scientific revolution.
2- Our age is the age of the atom, space and great medical achievements.
3- In Egypt, the beginning of spring is marked by Sham El-Nessim.

B) Translate into English:

- 1- تعكس الموسيقى ثقافة المجتمع كما تعبر عن مدى رقيه وحضارته.
2- لا بد أن نبذل قصارى جهدنا لجذب المزيد و المزيد من السياح لكي نزيد دخلنا القومي.
3- يجب على الشباب أن يقبل العمل في الأماكن النائية حتى لا يظلوا بلا عمل.
4- بدأ الاحتفال بموكب كبير من السيارات تحركت نحو الميدان الرئيسي.
5- أعترف أنني كنت مخطئاً وأنت كنت على صواب.
6- دائماً قل الصدق ولا تقول كذباً أبداً مهما كان الموقف.

Unit 14: Madeleine L'Engle: A Wrinkle in Time

Key Vocabulary

wrinkle	تجعد / يتجعد	defeat	يهزم / هزيمة
clear ... up	يوضح / ينظم	manage to	يتمكن من
non-fiction	الواقع	gap	فجوة / ثغرة
lecture	محاضرة	transport (-ation)	ينقل / النقل
Switzerland	سويسرا	rule	يحكم
concern	قلق / اهتمام	evil	شرير
concentrate	يركز	essential	أساسي

Vocabulary

fictional	خيالي	ruler	حاكم
lecturer	محاضر	jumper	بلوفر
Swiss	سويسري	safety	السلامة
detective	محقق / بوليسي	cave	كهف
calculator	آلة حاسبة	stand for	يرمز الى
summary	ملخص	realise	يدرك
check	يتحقق من	interrupt	يقاطع
publish	ينشر	powerful	قوى
discuss	يناقش	missing	مفقود
job title	مسمى وظيفي	brain	المخ
online	عبر الانترنت	control	يتحكم
theatre	المسرح	planet	كوكب
actor	ممثل	fight – fought – fought	يقاثل
space	فضاء / فراغ	upset – upset – upset	يُحزن / يزعج
lovely	جميل / لذيذ	pack	يحزم الأمتعة / يعبئ
fence	سور / حائط	equipment	معدات
prohibition	حظر / منع	possessions	ممتلكات
pair of	زوج من	daytime	وقت النهار
imaginary	خيالي	members	أعضاء
confusing	مربك / محير	moral	درس أخلاقي
impressive	مُبهر / مُلفت	the underground	مترو الأنفاق
mystery	سر غامض	land / save	يهبط / ينقذ - يوفر
mysterious	غامض	burn / oven	يحرق - يحترق / فرن
frightened	خائف	Greek (Greece)	يوناني
appropriate	مناسب	Polish (Poland)	بولندي
phone charger	شاحن تليفون	sun cream	كريم ضد حروق الشمس

Prepositions & Expressions

be made into	يتم تحويله الى	a book in English	كتاب في الانجليزية
escape from	يهرب من	a degree in English	درجة في الإنجليزية
essential to	أساسي لـ	a difference in meaning	اختلاف في المعنى
come and go	يأتي ويذهب	a good name for	اسم جيد لـ
win an award	يفوز بجائزة	work on a project	يعمل في مشروع
give a lecture	يلقي محاضرة	find it hard to	يجد من الصعب أن
get wet	يبتل	travel into space	يسافر للفضاء
No parking	ممنوع انتظار السيارات	come round to	يمر بـ / يأتي الى
make a summary	يعمل ملخص	know ... the best	أفضل من يعرف ...
concern for	يهتم بـ	the best of friends	أفضل الاصدقاء
a book by ... about	كتاب لـ... عن	move back to	ينتقل عائدا الى
concentrate on	يركز على	Be / become a success	يصبح ناجحاً
clear up / explain / solve a mystery			يكشف غموض لغز ما

Antonyms

clear	يكشف / يوضح	cover	يغطي / يخبي
essential	جوهرى / اساسى	inessential	غير أساسى / غير حيوى
defeated	مهزوم / إنهزامى	undefeated	لا يُقهر
upset	يُحزن / يضايق	cheer (up)	يبهج / يفرح
allow	يسمح	ban	يمنع / يحظر

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
necessitate	يجبر	necessity	ضرورة	necessary	ضرورى
disappear	يختفى	disappearance	اختفاء	disappeared	مخفى
defeat	يهزم	defeatist	شخص انهزامى	defeated	مهزوم (صفة)
concern	يهتم	concern	اهتمام	concerned	مهتم
concentrate	يركز	concentration	تركيز	concentrated	مُرَكز
imagine	يتخيل	imagination	خيال	imaginary	خيالى

Words go together

fictional character	شخصية خيالية	economic union	تكتل اقتصادى
make a list	يعمل قائمة	sign an agreement	يوقع اتفاقية
go camping	يخيم / يقيم معسكر	peace treaty	معاهدة السلام
swimming pool	حمام سباحة	space explorer	مستكشف فضاء
tell the truth / lies	يقول الصدق / يكذب	tennis racket	مضرب تنس

Read the following carefully

Listening :

Mazin: We have to read a summary of a book in English next week. It's called A Wrinkle in Time.

Salem: Who's it by?

Mazin: It's by Madeleine L'Engle.

Salem: I don't know Madeleine L'Engle. Where's she from?

Mazin: I'm not sure. I can check online. Here, look. Madeleine L'Engle was born in 1918 in New York. Her father was a writer and Madeleine loved writing stories, too. She wrote her first one when she was five. The family moved to Switzerland where Madeleine went to school. When they moved back to the United States, Madeleine graduated in English.

Salem: What did she do after university?

Mazin: She worked in a theatre in New York. Her first book was published in 1945 and it was about her time at school in Europe.

Salem: Did she have any children?

Mazin: Yes. She married an actor in 1946 and they had three children. Madeleine then started writing stories for children, but for many years, her books were not very successful. She had to help her husband by working in his shop.

Salem: So when did she write A Wrinkle in Time?

Mazin: She wrote it in 1962.

Salem: Do you know what it's about?

Mazin: It's about a girl who must travel into space to clear up the mystery of her father, who has disappeared. Madeleine read her children the story as she wrote it, perhaps worried that other children would not like it. But she needn't have worried because the book was very successful and won an award. It has also been made into a film.

Salem: Did she write anything else?

Mazin: Yes, she also wrote poems and non-fiction books, and she gave lectures, too. She died in 2007.

Salem: Well, I don't have to read A Wrinkle in Time for school, but I like the sound of it. I think I'll read it too!

Mazin: Good idea. You must come round to my house when you've finished it. Then we can discuss it.

Salem: Thanks, Mazin. I'd like that.

Reading :

A Wrinkle in Time

Meg Murry is a schoolgirl who finds life difficult. Her father is a scientist and he had been working on a project that **allowed** people **to travel** into space when he suddenly **disappeared**. He has been **missing** for more than a year.

One day, a strange woman called Mrs Whatsit visits Meg, her younger brother, Charles and their friend Calvin. She tells them that they can find their father by travelling through a **gap** in time and space.

The next day, Mrs Whatsit and her friends Mrs Who and Mrs Which **transport** Meg, Charles and Calvin to a **planet** called Camazotz, where they say that the children will find their father. However, the planet is ruled by something like a big, **evil brain** called IT. When Charles tries to **fight** IT, the brain wins and soon **controls** everything that Charles says and does. Meg finds her father, but when she and Calvin try to help Charles, the brain starts to control them, too.

At the last moment, their father **saves** Meg and Calvin by transporting them to another planet called Ixchel, but they have to leave Charles behind. He is still controlled by IT.

On Ixchel, they meet Mrs Whatsit again. She says that only Meg can save her brother. She says that Meg has something that can defeat IT, but she must **discover** what this is for herself. So Meg travels back to the planet Camazotz alone.

She is **frightened**, but slowly she **realises** that she has a power that IT does not have: the power to love. She **concentrates** on her love and **concern** **for** her brother and suddenly Charles becomes free from IT's control. Meg and her brother **manage to** travel back to earth, where they **land** in the vegetable garden of their home. Here they find that all their family, Calvin and Mrs Whatsit are safe.

Definitions

clear up	explain something that is confusing or mysterious make a place look tidier by putting things back where they belong
non-fiction	about real facts or events, not imaginary ones
fictional	something / someone imaginary and from a book or story
lecture	a talk to a group of people about a subject
lecturer	someone who gives lectures , especially in a university.
Switzerland	a country in the centre of Europe
Swiss	relating to Switzerland or its people.
concentrate	to think very carefully about something that you are doing.
concern	a feeling of worry about something important
defeat	failure to win or succeed

evil	someone who deliberately does very cruel things to harm others
gap	a space between two objects or two parts of an object .
manage	to succeed in doing something difficult especially after trying hard
rule	to have the official power to control a country

Language Notes

favourite	مفضل / أعلى من غيره	English is my favourite subject.
favourable	مستحب/ مستحسن/ مشجع	It's better to say "Yes". This is favourable .

beat	يهزم شخص أو فريق في منافسة	Mr Hesham can beat anyone at chess.
defeat	يهزم شخص أو دولة في معركة	We defeated Israel in 1073.

manage to	ينجح بصعوبة	Our national team managed to win the final match.
Be able to	يستطيع أن يفعل	I was able to beat him easily.

especially	خاصة (لتمييز شيء أو شخص)	especially	خصيصا لـ (لغرض خاص)
A wheelchair is especially made for the disabled.		We must increase our production especially wheat.	

- عند التعبير عن القياس (الطول والعرض والارتفاع والعمق) نستخدم :	
1- الصفة فقط.	أو 2- الأسم مسبوقة بحرف الجر in
The wall is two metres high . / in height.	

However	= مع ذلك but	- She is very beautiful, however she is unmarried.
----------------	--------------	---

Spot The Difference

imaginary	خيالي (غير حقيقي)	imaginative	إبداعي / واسع الخيال
rule	قاعدة / حكم	roll	يتدحرج
gap	فجوة	gab	ثرثرة
transport	ينقل	transform	يُحول
usual	معتاد (رؤيته / فعله)	ordinary	عادي (غير مميز عن غيره)
save	ينقذ / يوفر	safe	آمن
possession	ملكية	position	مكان / مكانة / موقع
pack	يحزم الأمتعة	back	ظهر
confusing	مربك / محير	confused	مرتبك / متحير
alone	منفردا / دون مساعدة	lonely	يشعر بالوحدة

Language Functions

Expressing necessity		Lack of necessity
You need to	It's (probably) a good idea to	You don't need ...
You really must ...	It's (really) important to / that we	You don't have to ...
You have to	It's essential to / that you	I don't think it's necessary to

Choose the correct answer:

- 1- (**Fictional – Imaginary – Fiction – Non-fiction**) describes something about real facts or events, not imaginary ones
- 2- A (**culture – lecture – mature – nature**) is a talk to a group of people about a subject
- 3- To (**wash – clear up – mend – fix**) is to explain something that is confusing or mysterious
- 4- (**Egypt – Canada – Switzerland – England**) is a country in the centre of Europe.
- 5- The people speak French, German and Italian in (**USA – Mexico – Italy – Switzerland**).
- 6- There is an interesting (**lecture – art – fun – section**) at the university about global warming.
- 7- At the end of the film, I think that the detective will (**clean up – switch off – turn up – clear up**) the mystery of the crime.
- 8- My brother loves reading novels, but I've always preferred reading (**non-fiction – really – fact – invisible**) books.
- 9- It was a difficult journey but we managed (**in – on – of – to**) get to the village.
- 10- The room was very noisy and it was hard to (**see – look – concentrate – read**) on my work.
- 11- Oliver Twist is a (**fiction – non-fiction – fictional – factual**) character invented by Charles Dickens.
- 12- We'll (**transport – put – took – give**) the metal bars to the factory in that truck.
- 13- My grandmother always feels concern (**to – of – by – about**) her grandchildren when we are away from home.
- 14- The sheep escaped through (**a table – a chair – a gap – lap**) in the fence.
- 15- Is your country (**rule – roller – ruler – ruled**) by a king or a president?
- 16- How are most goods (**transported – transplanted – transfusion – transmitted**) around your country– by plane, train, ship or truck?
- 17- Who was the last team to (**gain – win – defeat – lose**) your favourite sports team? What happened?
- 18- Do you feel (**concern – concentrate – scorn – corn**) for ill members of your family?

- 19- When do you find it hard to (**play – finish – end – concentrate**) on your work?
- 20- The King has been the (**rule – roller – rider – ruler**) of that country for many years.
- 21- The underground and buses are two forms of (**transportation – exportation – importation – transfusion**) of city.
- 22- If I study for too long without a break, I begin to lose (**concentrate – mind – brain – concentration**).
- 23- That team never lose! They are (**defeatist – undefeated – defeated – beaten**) for more than a year!
- 24- He always thinks that he is going to fail. He is a (**defeated – undefeated – won – beaten**).
- 25- A Wrinkle in time is (**of – with – by – in**) Madeleine L'Engle.
- 26- Her first book was (**about – by – with – for**) her time at school in Europe.
- 27- It's probably a good idea to take a / an (**ring – jumper – necklace – bracelet**) as it might be cold in the evening.
- 28- When you revise, take regular breaks as it's difficult to (**concern – conclude – concentrate – confirm**) for more than an hour.
- 29- He is (**Egyptian – Swiss – Sudanese – Spanish**). He comes from Switzerland.
- 30- I will help my mother to clear (**in – on – of – up**) the kitchen.
- 31- The lawyer found an evidence and could (**clarify – clean – clear – clap**) the accused in front of the court.
- 32- His lectures are interesting because he is a creative (**lecturer – butcher – diver – driver**).
- 33- His novel was so successful that it was made (**in – on – of – into**) a film.
- 34- We have to read a (**sum – summarise – sum up – summary**) of a book in English next week.
- 35- She had to help her husband (**at – with – by – of**) working in his shop.
- 36- You must come (**round – on – of – in**) to my house when you've finished it.
- 37- Meg Murry is a schoolgirl who finds life so (**difficulty – difficult – ease – hardship**).
- 38- He had worked (**at – of – about – on**) a project that allowed people to travel into space
- 39- She can find her father by travelling through a (**plane – ship – lap – gap**) in time and space.
- 40- They (**transfer – transmit – transport – export**) the children to a planet called Camazotz.
- 41- The planet is (**ruled – role – rolled – pruned**) by something like a big, evil brain called IT.
- 42- The evil brain (**beats – gains – wins – defeats**) and soon controls Charles.

- 43- When they try to help Charles, the brain starts to control them (**either – to – too – also**).
- 44- Meg and her brother (**succeed in – pass – cross – manage to**) travel back to earth.
- 45- What is unusual about the (**characters – character – character's – characters'**) names Mrs Whatsit, Mrs Who and Mrs Which?
- 46- Would you like to read all of A (**Winkle – Rank – Weak – Wrinkle**) in Time?
- 47- What does IT usually stand (**to – on – for – about**)?
- 48- What do you think the (**rural – moral – molar – oral**) of the story is?
- 49- The love of family and friends is much more important than money or a job (**title – address – dress – turtle**).
- 50- What do you need when you go (**in – on – of – about**) holiday.
- 51- Your brothers and sisters may interrupt you and (**upset – love – adore – like**) you.
- 52- These are the people who know you the best and who (**love – hate – envy – detest**) you.
- 53- You should concentrate (**upon – on – over – about**) your teacher's explanation.
- 54- When he was trapped, Rassendyll escaped through a (**lodge – castle – bridge – gap**).
- 55- Many ships cross the Suez Canal to (**transfer – transmit – transport – transparent**) goods from a country to another.
- 56- Don't let yourself be distracted and try hard to keep your (**concentrate – mind – brain – concentration**) during the prayer.
- 57- That team never lost! They (**defeated – undefeated – won – beaten**) all the other teams easily!
- 58- Why are you pessimistic? Your last novel was a great (**succeed – successful – succession – success**).
- 59- Your skin has (**disappeared – bleached – worn – wrinkled**) because of ageing.
- 60- She finally (**saw – watched – realized – recognized**) her lifelong ambition.
- 61- Where is she from? – I'm not sure. I can (**clear – check – defeat – allow**) online.
- 62- Her first book was (**published – polished – disappeared – discovered**) in 1945.
- 63- She was working on a project that (**allowed – made – let – provided**) people to travel into space.
- 64- The (**arrival – culture – coral – moral**) of the story is that love is stronger than evil.
- 65- She found life difficult when her father (**transported – disappeared – defeated – allowed**).

- 66- I've made a / an (**pack – pair – menu – list**) of places I'd like to visit in Paris.
 67- In the (**bedtime – daytime – full time – part time**) we go school and work.
 68- The instructions are really (**obvious – clear – confusing – simple**). Could you help me with them, please?
 69- There's a (**space – soice – piece – pace**) here for you to write more words.
 70- I'll be home late so please (**feed – save – eat – carry**) me some dinner.

Language Focus

Modal verbs of necessity, prohibition and lack of necessity

1- have / has (got) to + infinitive

- تستخدم للتعبير عن إلزام مفروض علينا وليس أماننا اختيار بسبب القواعد والقوانين أو الظروف :

- You **have to show** your passport when you leave the country.
- **Do you have to wear** that yellow tie to work? (Is it part of your uniform?)
- We **have to wear** helmets if we are going to take the motorcycle. (The law says so.)

need / needs to + infinitive

- تستخدم للتعبير عن أشياء ضرورية في الحاضر أو المستقبل :

- He **needs to be** busy all the time or his boss will be angry.
- We **need to revise** for next week's exam.

had to + infinitive = was / were to + infinitive

- تستخدم للتعبير عن الضرورة في الماضي :

- We **had to take** a taxi as it was raining heavily.

2- must + infinitive

- تستخدم للتعبير عن إحساس قوي بضرورة عمل شيء من وجهة نظر المتكلم أو للتعبير عن أن شيء مهم بالنسبة لنا وفي هذه الحالة تستخدم فقط مع الضمائر I / We ومع You في حالة السؤال :

- I **must study** hard before my exam. (It's important to study hard)
- I **must visit** my grandparents more often. (It's important to me that I do.)
- **Must you wear** that yellow tie?
(Is it important to you that you do it? This also suggests that it bothers me.)
- وتستخدم للتعبير عن نصيحة قوية وفي الأوامر وعندما نُذكر أنفسنا بضرورة عمل شيء :
- You **mustn't be** late or dad will be angry. (strong advice)
- You **must clean** your room before you go out with your friends. (an order)
- كما تستخدم في حالة توجيه دعوة حارة أو التعبير عن مشاعر صادقة :
- You **must come** and see us at the weekend. - You **must try** my cake.

- لاحظ استخدام **must** للتعبير عن الضرورة في المضارع والمستقبل فقط :

- I **must go** now.

- I **must see** my doctor tomorrow.

3- Lack of Necessity نقص الضرورة

don't / doesn't have / need to – needn't + infinitive

- تستخدم للتعبير عن عدم الضرورة في المضارع أو المستقبل :

- She isn't late for school so she **doesn't have to / needn't hurry**.

- When you are on holiday, you **don't need to go** to bed early.

- She **doesn't have to work** on Saturday.

didn't have to / didn't need to + infinitive

- تستخدم للتعبير عن عدم الضرورة في الماضي :

- I **didn't have to buy** more bread. We already have a lot.

(I didn't buy bread because we have some.)

- I **didn't have to do** the shopping yesterday. My brother did it.

- I **didn't need to go** to school yesterday. It was a holiday.

needn't have + pp.

- تستخدم للتعبير عن حدث تم في الماضي على الرغم من كونه غير ضروري :

- I **needn't have bought** more bread. We already have a lot.

(I bought bread, but it was not necessary because we have some.)

- You **needn't have brought** your umbrella. It's not going to rain.

4- Prohibition المنع - التحريم - الحظر

mustn't + infinitive

- تستخدم للتعبير عن أن شيء ممنوع أو غير مسموح به أو يترتب عليه نتيجة سيئة وتستخدم أيضا في كل ما تستخدم فيه **must** عندما يكون المعنى منفي :

- You **mustn't smoke** in hospitals.

= You **aren't allowed to smoke** in hospitals.

= You **aren't permitted to smoke** in hospitals.

= You **are forbidden to smoke** in hospitals.

= You **are banned from smoking** in hospitals.

= You **are prohibited from smoking** in hospitals.

Choose the correct answer:

1- You (**had – will have – must – should**) to buy a ticket before you travel on the train.

2- Mona (**didn't – needn't – doesn't – don't**) have to take her sunglasses because it was cloudy.

3- Yunis (**had – have – must – should**) to do the maths exercise again as he got it all wrong.

4- We've moved to a new house so you (**need – don't need – have – must**) come round and see it.

- 5- You (**needn't have – didn't have – must have – have to**) cleaned the windows because a man comes to wash them every week.
- 6- We (**had – have – must – should**) to pass our exams to get into university.
- 7- They (**had to – have – must – should**) leave the school yesterday .
- 8- You (**mustn't – will have – must – needn't**) put the newspaper on the oven. It might burn.
- 9- I (**had – will have – must – need**) stop eating sweets! They are bad for me.
- 10- Tarek (**needn't – must – should – have to**) get the bus to the park. We'll take him in our car.
- 11- The students (**didn't have – needn't have – had to – must**) written all those notes. All the information is typed for them.
- 12- Karim was already at the sports centre when I arrived, so I (**didn't have to – needn't – mustn't – didn't need**) send him a text to meet us there.
- 13- We (**had – have – will – must**) to read a summary of a book in English next week.
- 14- She (**had – must – need – have**) to help her husband by working in his shop.
- 15- The book is about a girl who (**have to – need to – must – was**) travel into space.
- 16- She (**didn't – doesn't – mustn't – needn't**) have worried because the book was very successful.
- 17- You (**must – have – needn't to – has to**) come round to my house when you've finished reading the story.
- 18- You (**needn't – don't have – mustn't – hadn't**) park there. It says 'No Parking'.
- 19- You (**needn't – don't have – mustn't – hadn't**) park there. There's a better place here.
- 20- Come and see me tomorrow. You (**have to – must – had to – need to**) come and see me tomorrow!
- 21- My sister made a cake. You (**must – have to – had to – needn't**) try it. It's lovely!
- 22- We (**don't need – don't have to – mustn't – need**) to walk to the park. The bus goes there.
- 23- You (**must – should – mustn't – don't have to**) run next to the swimming pool. You'll fall over.
- 24- In England, most people (**have to – must – has to – mustn't to**) work until they are 67.
- 25- I (**must – has to – had to – needn't to**) buy some bread from the shops. Don't let me forget!
- 26- We (**needn't have – didn't have to – had to – have to**) run to the museum because it was already closed when we got there.
- 27- I (**had – am able – am going – have**) to stay at home because I was ill.

- 28- Poor Walid broke his leg yesterday and (**has to – must – had to – need to**) go to hospital.
- 29- You (**shall – could – need to – manage**) get more practice if you want to pass your driving test.
- 30- You (**may – might – can – must**) take it as soon as you get home. This is very important.
- 31- You (**can – have to – mustn't – might not**) take photographs here. It's against the law.
- 32- You (**mustn't – needn't – don't have to – should**) take photos here. It's a military area.
- 33- You (**mustn't – need to – don't have to – should**) come with me if you are busy.
- 34- Diabetic patients (**are allowed – aren't allowed – mustn't – are banned**) to eat free of sugar food .
- 35- You (**must – has to – will have – needn't**) be 17 to drive a car in England. It's a law.
- 36- Ali (**needn't – mustn't – should – ought to**) have brought food. We already have a lot.
- 37- I (**mustn't – need to – must – ought to**) remember to email my cousin today. It's his birthday.
- 38- She (**has – needn't have – doesn't have – shouldn't**) gone to school yesterday. There wasn't anything useful.
- 39- You (**have – needn't – mustn't – must**) taste this cake . It is delicious
- 40- You (**can – have to – mustn't – might not**) swim here. It's too dangerous.
- 41- You (**didn't – needn't – doesn't – don't**) have to add spices to the food as mother has done that job.
- 42- You (**doesn't have to – didn't have to – shouldn't – needn't**) come if you don't want.
- 43- We (**mustn't – needn't – can't – shouldn't**) lock the car. It's safe here.
- 44- I was so tired yesterday. I (**was – must – needn't – had to**) go to bed early.
- 45- If I want to start this year, I (**have to – may – must – shall**) apply by the end of next week. I have no choice.
- 46- You (**must – can – can't – mustn't**) park here until you pay some money.
- 47- At my sports club, everyone (**has to – should – may – must to**) wear flat shoes. It's an important rule.
- 48- We (**have to – must – mustn't – needn't**) buy souvenirs for our friends while we're here.
- 49- We (**must – mustn't – needn't – don't have to**) forget that tourism is very important for Egypt.
- 50- I (**need – have got – needn't – must**) phone my friend this morning. I promised him I would.

- 51- You (**needn't – mustn't – don't have to – have to**) drive fast in the city centre. It's very dangerous.
- 52- You (**don't have to – mustn't – can't – don't need**) take that train. There's another one in ten minutes.
- 53- You (**must – have to – need to – needn't**) buy a pen. I can lend you one.
- 54- You (**mustn't – don't have – need to – needn't**) speak so loudly. We are in the library.
- 55- When you arrive in another country, you (**have to – don't need to – mustn't – haven't**) show your passport.
- 56- I (**have to – shouldn't – need – must**) hurry. My train leaves in 5 minutes.
- 57- I have been tired all day. I (**needn't – have got – don't have to – must**) get more sleep.
- 58- You (**must – ought – have to – could have**) come and stay with us in Arizona sometime.
- 59- You (**may not – mustn't – can – needn't**) bite your nails. It's a bad habit.
- 60- The car broke down and we (**have to get – had got to get – had to get – must get**) a taxi.
- 61- You (**can't – needn't – mustn't – need to**) whisper. Nobody can hear us.
- 62- I hate (**should – might – having to – must**) get up early in the morning.
- 63- The Prime Minister (**will be – is to – was being – must have**) meet his European counterparts to discuss the war against drugs.
- 64- You (**should have – could – needn't have – must have**) purchased a new camera. You already have a good one.
- 65- You (**mustn't – needn't – can't – shouldn't**) give me a lift to the airport if you are busy. I'm not in a hurry.

Exercises on Unit 14

2) Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

People have been writing about strange worlds and travelling to space for thousands of years. Parts of the famous Arabic story One Thousand and One Nights might be described as a kind of science fiction. But science really started to influence how we all lived in the nineteenth century. This was a time when many exciting new things were invented: steam trains, the telephone, electricity, photographs and much more. The writer Jules Verne (1828-1905) looked at nineteenth century technology and imagined how it could be improved to do amazing things. He wrote about people travelling to the centre of the earth, to the moon or deep under the sea. Many people consider Verne to be the first true science fiction writer.

In 1895, the writer HG Wells (1866–1946) saw technology differently. He wrote about the possible dangers of technology. His books include *The Time Machine*, in which the hero travels into a dangerous and unpleasant future. Other writers also thought that technology could be bad. Aldous Huxley's *Brave New World* (1931) is about a future in which people are produced in factories. But not all science fiction writers saw technology as bad. Authors such as Isaac Asimov (1920–1992) often wrote about a future in which science can solve all our problems.

Science fiction has evolved with technology. In the 1960s, space was being explored for the first time. **This** gave science fiction writers ideas for what explorers might find in space: strange worlds and unexplained mysteries, such as in the novels of Arthur C. Clarke. More recently, many science fiction stories have been about robots. Could they become more intelligent than people? Should we use them or could they start to take over and rule the world? In science fiction, anything is possible.

A) Choose the correct answer :

- 1- In his novels, Jules Verne wrote about technology that
 - a) could make life better
 - b) made life dangerous
 - c) people used at that time
 - d) could never exist
- 2- According to the article, what influenced science fiction writers in the 1960s?
 - a) Arthur C. Clarke
 - b) space travel
 - c) unexplained mysteries
 - d) robots
- 3- In what way was Isaac Asimov different to many science fiction writers?
 - a) He was optimistic about science.
 - b) He was pessimistic about science.
 - c) He only wrote about space.
 - d) He only wrote about robots.
- 4- In conclusion, the text says that, in science fiction,
 - a) technology is good
 - b) technology is bad
 - c) anything might happen
 - d) there are never any problems
- 5- What does the underlined word **this** refer to?
 - a) changes in science fiction
 - b) changes in technology
 - c) the new year
 - d) space exploration
- 6- What do you think the phrase **take over** means?
 - a) become people
 - b) steal things
 - c) get control of
 - d) hide

B) Answer the following questions :

- 7- How did HG Wells describe technology in his book *The Time Machine*?
- 8- Who is the first true science fiction writer?
- 9- Why has science fiction changed over time?
- 10- Do you think that science fiction will always be popular? Why/Why not?

4) Finish the following dialogue :

Hala and Maya are meeting at the book club.

Hala : There are only two of us here today. Where are the others?

Maya :

Hala : You're right. I forgot that the tennis competition was on TV.

Maya : We need to choose a new book for our book club next month.

Hala : ?

Maya : I don't like science fiction. What about a detective story?

Hala : Detective stories are always the same.

Maya :

Hala : I'd go along with that. Non-fiction books always teach you something and that one about history looks interesting.

Maya :

Hala : Yes, you're right. I'll email them the book title so they know what we are going to read.

Maya : The next book club meeting will be the second anniversary of the club!

Hala :

Maya : Yes, it is good news, isn't it?

5) Write a paragraph of (120) words on ONE of the following:

- A text about Egyptian folk music
- The most famous building in your area

6) A-Translate into Arabic:

- The tourists needn't have brought umbrellas because it is not going to rain.
- Cairo underground metro lines serve millions of people all over greater Cairo.
- When you travel abroad, you have to know very well about the country you are travelling to.
- Having a map and a mobile phone is a must if you are going camping.

B- Translate into English:

- 1- نجح رواد الفضاء في الدول المتقدمة في الهبوط علي سطح القمر والمريخ.
- 2- هل تعتقد أن هناك أي فائدة من الإنفاق علي غزو الفضاء؟
- 3- انت لست في حاجة لشراء هاتف جديد، سوف أعطيك هاتفي القديم.
- 4- هل قرأت قصصا أو كتبا عن أشخاص سافروا الى الفضاء من قبل؟
- 5- يجب أن لا تتوقف بسيارتك هنا، هناك لافتة تقول "ممنوع انتظار السيارات".

Unit 15: Building and Engineering

Key Vocabulary

commuter	مسافر يومي (للعمل مثلا)	carve / curve	ينحت / ينحني - منحني
consider	يعتبر	cliff (s)	جرف: منحدر صخري شاهق
diameter	قطر	concrete	خرسانة
drill	يحفّر / ينقب	illuminate	ينير / يضيئ
invest / investor	يستثمر / مستثمر	be positioned	يوضع في مكان معين
engineering	الهندسة / هندسي	rays	أشعة
investment (education)	استثمار	solar panel	لوحة شمسية
tunnel	نفق / يشق نفق	emissions	انبعاثات
tunnelling	شق الانفاق	power cut	انقطاع التيار الكهربى
massive	ضخم / هائل	power station	محطة توليد الطاقة
base / basis	قاعدة خرسانية / معنوية	raise	يرفع / يربى

Vocabulary

regularly	بانتظام	business	اعمال تجارية
the underground	مترو الانفاق	deduce	يستنتج
engineer	مهندس / يهندس / يرتب	temples	معابد
engineering project	مشروع هندسي	site	موقع
railway system	نظام السكة الحديد	rising sun	شمس مشرقة
metro line	خط المترو	statues	تماثيل
Egyptian pound	جنيه مصرى	flood	فيض / يغمر / فيضان
commute	يسافر الى و من العمل	rescue	ينقذ / انقاذ
massiveness	ضخامة	emperor	امبراطور
carry passengers	يحمل المسافرين	difficulties	صعوبات
steam trains	قطارات بخارية	open	يفتح / يبدأ / مفتوح
The Middle East	الشرق الأوسط	re-open	يعيد افتتاح
the northeast	الشمال الشرقى	attack	يهجم على / هجوم
combination	خليط / مزيج	attackers	مهاجمين
enemies	أعداء	The High Dam	السد العالى
eventually	فى النهاية	The Great Wall	ال سور العظيم
construction	تشبيد / بناء	The Nile Valley	وادى النيل
structure	بناء	gate / note	بوابة / ملحوظة
drilling machine	ماكينة الحفر	threaten / threat	يهدد / تهديد
incredible	مُذهل / لا يُصدّق	stone / brick	حجر / قالب طوب
particular	محدد / معين	hole / draft	حفرة / مسودة
historical monuments	أثار تاريخية	works of engineering	أعمال هندسية

Prepositions & Idiomatic Expressions

a centre for business	مركز للتجارة	compare ... with	يقارن ... بـ
with a diameter of	بقطر يصل الى	compare ... to	يشبهه ... بـ
on the underground	بالمetro	go under the Nile	يمشى تحت النيل
take the underground	يستقل المترو	be / feel very proud of	فخور جدا بـ
keep the attackers out	يُبعد المهاجمين	one end to the other	من طرف لآخر
make / draw / put plans	يضع خطة	There might be ...	ربما يوجد ...
Be carved / cut into ...	منحوت في	produce energy	ينتج طاقة
cut into pieces	يقطع الى قطع	at certain times	في اوقات معينة
more attractive to	اكثر جاذبية لـ	be attached to	يتم وصله بـ
It's considered to be	انه يعتبر بمثابة	run on	يسير بـ / في
cost the same	يكلف نفس الشيء	No, not yet.	لا، ليس حتى الآن
get to	يصل إلي	work on as	يعمل في ... كـ
come to an agreement	يصل لاتفاق	It opened in	بدأ في ... (معلوم)
different to	مختلف عن	around the world	في كل أنحاء العالم
northern China	شمال الصين	for up to	الى ما يصل الى
sound like a.....	يبدو كأنه	Until recently, ...	حتى وقت قريب
take place in	يقع / يحدث في	Is it ever right to ...?	هل من الصواب أن ...?

Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Antonym	العكس
save	يوفر	waste	يبدد
modern	حديث	ancient	قديم
remember	يتذكر	forget	ينسى
massive	هائل / ضخم	tiny	ضئيل الحجم
the same	نفس الشيء	different	مختلف
asleep	نائم	awake	مستيقظ

Derivatives

Verb	Noun	Adjective
attract	attraction	attractive
tour	tourism	tourist / touristic
deduce	deduction	deductive
forget	forgetfulness	forgetful
illuminate	illumination	illuminating
repeat	repetition	repetitive
base	base	basic

Words go together

investment Bank	بنك الاستثمار	architecture	الهندسة المعمارية
building materials	مواد بناء	a building site	موقع بناء
ceramic tiles	بلاط سيراميك	infrared rays	الأشعة تحت الحمراء
road construction	إنشاء الطرق	dominate the headlines	تتصدر العناوين
remove obstacles	يزيل العقبات	a beam of light	شعاع من الضوء

Read the following carefully

Listening :

Tourist: Excuse me, could you tell me the best way to get to the city centre, please?

Man: Yes, you ought to take an underground train. It's the quickest way from here.

Tourist: I didn't know Cairo had underground trains.

Man: Yes, it's the first underground railway system in Africa or the Middle East. I know this because I work on it as an engineer!

Tourist: You must know a lot about it. Is it new?

Man: No, but it's a lot newer than the London or Paris systems. For example, London's underground was opened in 1863. Steam trains used to run on it!

Tourist: It can't have been very nice travelling in a tunnel full of steam!

Man: That's right. The first line here in Cairo was opened in 1987. It's about 44 kilometres long and goes from Helwan, in the south of Cairo, to New El Marg in the northeast.

Tourist: Really? That really must have made travelling around Cairo easier, especially for commuters.

Man: It certainly has. The underground system carries nearly two million people every day.

Tourist: Is it expensive?

Man: Not really. I think it might have been cheaper in the past but journeys cost the same whether you travel between two stations or go from one end of the line to the other. The cheapest ticket in London is about 70 Egyptian pounds.

Tourist: That's fantastic! It must have improved people's journeys to work.

Man: It has. **Tourist:** So how many lines are there in the system?

Man: There are three at the moment, but there are plans for more. Line two goes from Shobra to El Monib. It goes under the Nile.

Tourist: Really? That's amazing! Tunnelling under the Nile can't have been easy.

Man: They used a massive drilling machine called Nefertiti. It dug a tunnel with a diameter of over eight metres.

Tourist: Is there a line to the airport?

Man: No, not yet - that'll be on line three. Some of that line is open already.

Tourist: The whole thing sounds like a massive engineering project. It can't have been cheap.

Man: No, it wasn't, but we're very proud of it, and it's considered to be one of the most modern underground systems in the world. And, of course, it's an investment in Egypt's future as a centre for tourism and business.

Tourist: When will it be finished?

Man: I'm not sure, but there might be six lines when the project is finished.

Tourist: It seems like a great system. I should have used it before.

Reading : Great Engineering Works

There are some amazing works of engineering around the world, both ancient and modern. Abu Simbel is the site of two temples which were carved into a cliff in about 1250 BC. The larger temple was positioned so that at certain times of the year, the rays of the rising sun would illuminate the temple's statues.

In 1954, the government decided to build Aswan High Dam. This meant that the Nile Valley would be flooded and that Abu Simbel would be under water, so plans were made to rescue it. The massive statues were cut into pieces and raised over 60 metres up the cliff, where they were attached to a concrete base. Today, the temples, which were re-opened in 1968, are an amazing combination of ancient and modern engineering.

Many years after the building of Abu Simbel, China had a different problem which was solved by another great engineering project. Enemies were attacking the rich towns of northern China. The emperor decided to keep the attacks out, so work on the Great Wall of China began in 220 BCE. Eventually, the wall reached a length of 6400 kilometre-long wall became the longest structure ever built. It can't have been easy because it was all made without machines.

One of the most important modern engineering projects took place in 2014 in South Africa. Until recently, the country often had problems with its electricity and there were often power cuts, which can't have been easy for a lot of people. For this reason, the Jasper Solar Energy Project was completed near the city of Kimberley. This is now one of the largest solar power stations in Africa. It has 325,360 solar panels which produce enough energy for up to 80,000 homes, but with zero emissions.

Definitions

commuter	someone who regularly travels to work, especially a long distance
diameter	a line from one side of a circle to the other and passing the centre
tunnel	a long hole in the ground for cars or trains to go through
investment	something that you buy as it will be valuable or useful, later

consider	to think of something carefully before making a choice / decision		
drill	make a hole in something hard with a machine		
base	a low hard surface on which other things can be built		
carve	to cut something, especially stone or wood, into a particular shape		
cliff	a high steep rock or piece of land		
illuminate	to make light shine on something		
concrete	material made by mixing small stones, cement, sand and water		
position	put something or someone in a place		
emission	the production or sending out of light , heat , gas etc.		
ray	a narrow line of light heat or other energy from the sun		
power-cut	when electricity suddenly stops		
solar panel	equipment that changes the sun's light into electricity		
solar	connected with the sun	massive	very big
power station	a building where electricity is produced		

Language Notes

take the train	يركب القطار	catch the train	لحق القطار
miss the train	يفوته القطار	miss someone / a place	يفتقد (شخص / مكان)

Ex: I always **take** the train - it's less hassle than a car.

She was worried that she'd arrive too late to **catch** the last train home.

You'll **miss** your train if you don't hurry up.

I **miss** my old friends very much.

He **missed** the 9:30 train.

work	عمل / مكان العمل (اسم لا يعد و لا يسبقها أداة)
a work of	عمل (فني / أدبي / هندسي)
works	أعمال فنية أو أدبية أو هندسية

Ex: It takes a lot of **work** to build a house.

Mr Mark leaves **work** at two o'clock every day.

Abu Simbel is an amazing **work** of engineering

Egypt has many amazing **works** of engineering

عمل هندسي رائع
أعمال هندسية رائعة

historic (famous or important in history)	مهم ومشهور كجزء من التاريخ
historical (connected with the study of history)	مرتبط بدراسة التاريخ

Ex: historic: day / site موقع / date تاريخ مهم / records سجلات / character / occasion /
event حدث / *moment* لحظة / *building* / *place* / *monuments*

Historical: plays / films / novels / research / papers أبحاث / studies /
event حدث / *moment* لحظة / *building* / *place* / *monuments*

Ever + PP. = that have (has) ever been + PP

Ex: The Great Wall of China is the longest structure ever built.

= It is the longest structure that has ever been built.

stop.....from + v. + ing

يمنع من

Ex: They wanted to **stop** enemies **from attacking** their country.

■ الصفات المنتهية بـ **ing** تعبر عن من وقع منه الفعل سواء كان شخص أو شئ (الفاعل).

■ الصفات المنتهية بـ **ed** تعبر عن من وقع عليه الفعل سواء كان شخص أو شئ (المفعول).

Ex: I'm very **tired** today. The horses were so **tired** after the long race.

Shopping is very **tiring**. He is **boring**. (He causes boredom)

hundred thousand million billion

■ هذه الكلمات إذا جاء قبلها عدد محدد لا يضاف لها **s** وتعتبر مفرد أما إذا لم يسبقها عدد محدد وتشير لكميات كبيرة يضاف لها **s** وتعتبر جمع.

Ex: His salary is 500 hundred pounds a month.

Thousands of people watched the match on TV yesterday.

- صفات المقارنة يسبقها *much / a lot / far* بمعنى "بكثير": **a lot newer**

Language Functions

Guessing and deducing information

I think they must have (built it to make travelling by sea easier).

Well, they might have used (thousands of workers).

I'm sure it can't have been easy. / Surely, it must have cost a lot of money.

Choose the correct answer:

- 1- The guide book said that the Khan el-Khalili (**considered – continued – thought – is considered**) to be one of the most exciting markets in Egypt.
- 2- Education is a / an (**investment – wish – desire – demand**) in the future of a country and its youth.
- 3- Nearly four Million (**competitors – commuters – contractors – conductors**) travel to and from London.
- 4- The Great Wall of China was a / an (**investment – conservative – massive – contemporary**) project which took hundreds of years to complete
- 5- That tunnel has a (**size – diameter – weight – price**) of 7 metres.
- 6- To make the tunnel through the mountain, machines first have to (**kill – empty – drill – fill**) a big hole.
- 7- The best way to the coast is to take the (**port – funnel – hole – tunnel**) through the mountains.
- 8- The quickest way to get to the city centre is to (**come – do – travel – take**) an underground train
- 9- A journey on the underground (**costs – pays – gives – makes**) less money than the other means.
- 10- Steam trains used to (**run – walk – swim – fly**) on the London underground.

- 11- The first line of the Paris Metro system (**started – opened – destroyed – made**) in 1900.
- 12- The height of the (**street – stiff – staff – cliff**) is 25 metres.
- 13- The artist (**harvested – carved – curved – starved**) the sculpture from a massive piece of stone.
- 14- At night, bright lights always (**illuminate – eliminate – contaminate – originate**) the front of the palace.
- 15- Many people worry about the (**missions – commuters – illusions – emissions**) from cars, which can pollute the air.
- 16- The Sphinx is (**postponed – possessed – preceded – positioned**) near the Pyramids at Giza.
- 17- During the storm, there was a power (**cut – supply – station – energy**) and all the lights went off.
- 18- The statue is built on a hard (**basic – base – case – brass**) made of concrete.
- 19- I like it in the morning when the first (**rice – rays – lays – roes**) of sunshine come into my room.
- 20- The (**solar panels – solar eclipses – power stations – power cuts**) on the roof of our house gives us hot water all day.
- 21- There used to be a bridge made of wood, but the new bridge is made of (**paper – rubber – cardboard – concrete**).
- 22- A (**minute – monument – moment – cement**) is a large structure that is built to remind us of an important event or a famous person.
- 23- To (**carve – crave – curve – activate**) means to cut stone or wood into a particular shape
- 24- To (**bright – sight – fight – illuminate**) is to make light shine on something.
- 25- To (**erase – chase – raise – praise**) is to move something to a higher position.
- 26- Do you (**communicate – commute – complain – compete**) long distances on going to work daily?
- 27- People can (**keep – waste – save – develop**) money by travelling on the underground.
- 28- The factory plans to (**resist – arrest – invest – detest**) in new computers.
- 29- The tourists were impressed on seeing the (**massiveness – massive – huge – big**) of the statue
- 30- If you want to ask the teacher a question, you should (**rise – arouse – rise – raise**) your hand.
- 31- Many years ago, enemies were (**attracting – attacking – attempting – attending**) the rich towns of northern China.
- 32- Building the Aswan High Dam meant that the Nile Valley would be (**fed – fled – flooded – fooded**).

- 33- The Great Pyramid is about 150 metres (**height – weight – high – low**).
- 34- (**Continually – Individually – Manually – Eventually**), the wall reached a length of 6,400 km.
- 35- Today, the temples are an amazing (**coronation – combination – communication – connection**) of ancient and modern engineering.
- 36- Plans were (**done – taken – made – given**) to rescue the temples of Abu Simbel.
- 37- The government is trying to (**attack – attend – attract – attain**) more tourists to Egypt.
- 38- He walked fast as he didn't want to (**lose – miss – loose – loss**) the bus.
- 39- We (**raised – rose – posted – positioned**) the plant in the window so it could get some sun.
- 40- My father studied (**engineer – engineering – agriculture – medicine**) at university and has designed many important bridges.
- 41- I'm trying to (**enfine – engine – engineer – design**) a meeting between them.
- 42- It's exhausting (**commuting – counting – connecting – compeering**) from Cairo to Alexandria every day.
- 43- Egypt is full of examples of amazing (**works – jobs – tasks – professions**) of ancient and modern engineering.
- 44- Abu Simbel is the (**site – sight – cite – sit**) of two temples south of Aswan.
- 45- The Egyptians feel very proud (**at – with – about – of**) the underground system.
- 46- The temples in Aswan were carved (**out – at – of – into**) a sandstone cliff.
- 47- The Great Wall of China (**reached – arrived – came – went**) a length of 6,400 km.
- 48- The Great Wall of China is the longest (**obstruction – structure – instruction – congestion**) ever built.
- 49- The Cairo Metro is a wonderful (**job – work – task – doing**) of engineering.
- 50- The Cairo Metro is the only underground railway (**arrangement – discipline – tidy – system**) in Africa or the Middle East.
- 51- The Chinese built the Great Wall of China to keep attackers (**out – up – over – down**).
- 52- The decision has not yet been made whether to (**tunnel – funnel – channel – canal**) under the river or build a bridge over it.
- 53- The man stood on the top of a steep (**tower – hill – wall – cliff**) and looked out to the sea.
- 54- He compared the Cairo underground (**by – in – with – of**) those in London and Paris.
- 55- The Cairo underground system will make Cairo more (**attractive – attracted – attract – attraction**) to business people and tourists.
- 56- You'll (**miss – lose – waste – spend**) your train if you don't hurry up.

- 57- He was (**attracted – attended – attempted – attacked**) and seriously injured by a gang of youths.
- 58- Huge engineering projects have positive (**effective – affects – effects – affections**) on the people who live in the area.
- 59- (**Historical – History – Historian – Prehistory**) monuments are sometimes threatened by new engineering projects.
- 60- Our washing machine broke down yesterday and (**floated – flooded – fought – fled**) the kitchen.
- 61- The (**commuter – diameter – base – mass**) of the pipe was 13 millimetres, perfect for the passage of the thick liquid.
- 62- Don't get too close to the edge of the (**monument – cliff – bark – stone**) because you will fall very far.
- 63- The small statue in the museum was (**based – positioned – carved – equipped**) with a very fine instrument.
- 64- Because Yasser had worked hard, he was (**based – carved – positioned – released**) to get the promotion.
- 65- The statue rests on an engraved منقوش (**base – stone – ray – cliff**).

Language Focus

1- Deduction الاستنتاج

* اولا المقصود بالاستنتاج (deduction) هو اننا نقوم بتخمين حدث معين سواء كان في الماضي او في الوقت الحالي بناء على جملة تقدم معلومة معينة (مؤكدة او غير مؤكدة) للتوضيح لاحظ المثالين التاليين :

Omar passed the exams . I'm sure (I deduce) that he is happy

Omar passed the exams. I'm sure (I deduce) he isn't sad .

* في الجملتين السابقتين نلاحظ ان هناك معلومة معينة (Omar passed the exams) وعلي اساسها استنتجنا انه بالتأكيد سعيد او بالتأكيد ليس حزينا وهو استنتاج لامر معين متاكدين من حدوثه في المضارع.

* وهنا لاحظ أيضاً :

Omar passed the exams . I'm sure (I deduce) he studied (had studied) hard

● في الجملة السابقة قدمنا معلومة (Omar passed the exams) ولكن الاستنتاج الذي نريده هو الامر الذي سبق هذه المعلومة بمعنى انه بالتأكيد ذاك في الماضي بجد حتي يصل للنجاح في الامتحانات.

يمكن استخدام بعض الأفعال الناقصة لعمل استنتاج سواء في المضارع أو الماضي

1- في المضارع نستخدم must / can't + inf. للتعبير عن التأكد :

Ali **must be** happy. He has just won a gold medal.

Nadia lived in England for 20 years, so she **must speak** English well.

He can't be cold. He isn't wearing a jacket.

لا يمكن ان تكون جاداً. You can't be serious. = اكيد بتهزر. You must be joking.

2- في الماضي نستخدم must / can't / couldn't + have + pp للتعبير عن التأكد :

It **must have been** cold there. There is snow on the ground in the photo.
They **can't have had** lunch. Their food is in the fridge.

- لاحظ أن **only – impossible** من علامات **can't**

3- للتعبير عن عدم التأكد في المضارع نستخدم may / might / could + inf.

The tourist **might be** American because he has an English guidebook.
My uncle **might not return** today. I'm not sure.

4- للتعبير عن عدم التأكد في الماضي نستخدم may / might / could + have + pp

I **can't find** my book. I **might have left** it at home.
We **didn't see** Tarek at the sports club today. He **might not have been** there.

- لاحظ : عند النفي نستخدم may / might not أما couldn't فتفيد الإستحالة.

5- يمكن استخدام could have + p.p للتعبير عن شيء كان ممكن يحدث ولكنه لم يحدث :

Sapt **could have shot** Duke Michael but he didn't.

6- يمكن أن يأتي الأستنتاج في الاستمرار والمجهول سواء ماضى او مضارع :

He **didn't hear** the phone. He **must have been taking** a shower.
The bank is working normally. It **can't have been robbed** yesterday.

2- Advice & Regret النصيحة والندم

1- تستخدم should / ought to / had better/ is supposed to + inf. عادة للنصيحة :

In summer, tourists **should wear** a hat and **ought not to sit** in the sun.

You **had better not look** at the sun. It's very dangerous.

2- تستخدم should (not) have + PP. للتعبير عن أن شيء كان يجب أن يحدث أو شيء

كان يجب أن لا يحدث وتفيد اللوم والندم :

You **shouldn't have arrived** late for your exam.

I'm sorry! I **ought to have come** on time.

You **should have done** your homework.

You **shouldn't have parked** your car here.

Choose the correct answer :

1- A: I don't know where my school bag is, Mum?

B: It's not here. You (**mustn't – can't – might – won't**) have left it on the train.

2- A: Look, Hesham's keys are on the table.

B: He (**must – can't – might – may**) have seen them when he left.

3- A: I rang you this morning, but you didn't answer.

B: Sorry, I (**can't – might not – may not – must**) have been asleep.

4- A: He's only been in the laboratory for ten minutes.

B: Surely he (**must – can't – might – may**) have finished the experiment.

5- A: Ali fell off his bike this morning. He hurt his head.

B: He (**should – must – might – will**) have been more careful.

- 6- Everyone is putting their umbrella up. It (**must – might – may – can't**) have started raining.
- 7- Leila looks very unhappy. She (**may – might – can't – must**) have passed her driving test.
- 8- The goats are all in the road. Karim (**must – can't – will – should**) have forgotten to shut the gate to the field.
- 9- My friend told me that the homework was on page 41, but there isn't a page 41. He (**will – must – should – can't**) have been mistaken.
- 10- I left a note for my mother saying that I'd be home at six. She rang me at five and asked why I wasn't home. She (**must – shouldn't – mustn't – can't**) have seen my note.
- 11- I think this structure (**must be – may be – might be – can't be**) important. It was built about 240 years ago.
- 12- It (**can't – should – mustn't – must**) have been very difficult to move those pieces of metal. They look incredibly heavy.
- 13- They (**must – can't – might – may**) have brought the pieces of metal very far. They're too big.
- 14- Surely, they (**must have – may have – can't have – might have**) brought them by boat. The boat would have sunk!
- 15- Zeinab (**must be – can't be – might be – must have been**) very surprised when she won the art competition. She didn't believe it.
- 16- There is a lot of traffic on the roads today, so we (**must have been – can't be – might be – ought to be**) late.
- 17- You (**should – can – must – ought**) to take an underground train. It's so comfortable.
- 18- You (**must – can – ought – should**) know a lot about this case. You understand everything about it.
- 19- It (**mustn't – must – shouldn't – can't**) have been very nice travelling in a tunnel full of steam!
- 20- The underground really (**can – may – might – must**) have made travelling around Cairo easier.
- 21- I (**might – should – must – can**) have used the metro before! I didn't know it's so comfortable and fast.
- 22- Ali (**can't – mustn't – might – must**) have travelled to Alexandria this morning. He is ill in bed!
- 23- Mona forgot that we have a test tomorrow. She (**ought – should – must – will**) have started revising last week.
- 24- It (**can't – shouldn't – must – might**) be expensive travelling around London. Bus and underground tickets cost a lot of money.
- 25- Hassan thinks that he did very well in the exam. He (**can't – might – must – may**) get the best results in the class!

- 26- Look, it's raining! I (**must – ought to – may – can't**) have brought an umbrella.
- 27- You (**ought – could have – had better – may not**) repaint the room. It looks so ugly.
- 28- You (**should have – could – shouldn't have – must have**) told her your secrets. She revealed them.
- 29- The telephone rang, but I didn't hear it. I (**can't have been – would have been – must have been – might have been**) asleep.
- 30- You've only been in the laboratory for half an hour. You (**can't – must – would – mustn't**) have finished your experiment already.
- 31- This (**may – can't – must – could**) be his car. He's too poor to afford such an expensive car.
- 32- David isn't here. He (**must – can – ought – should**) have gone home to study for the test tomorrow.
- 33- Ahmed is a professor of Chemistry. He must (**be – have been – have – had been**) very clever at school.
- 34- You (**shall – could – ought to – should have**) get more practice if you want to pass your driving test.
- 35- If you don't understand, you (**may – might – mustn't – should**) ask your teacher. That's my advice.
- 36- His watch (**must – might – can – can't**) have cost much money. It's made of plastic.
- 37- It (**can't have – will have – must have – didn't have**) been very windy during the night. There are branches all over the ground.
- 38- Tunnelling under the Nile (**must have – may have – can't have – might have**) been easy. I'm sure it was difficult.
- 39- My father (**didn't have – won't have – shall have – must have**) walked to work this morning. His car is still in the garage.
- 40- He said I (**may – might – should – needn't**) try a different kind of job. I think it's good advice.
- 41- He can't walk. He (**must – mustn't – shouldn't – won't**) be ill.
- 42- He spends so much money. He (**can't – shouldn't – must – won't**) be rich.
- 43- You (**can't have – must have – should have – will have**) finished that book already. You bought it only yesterday and it is very long.
- 44- He (**can't have – mustn't have – must have – should have**) been injured. There was blood on his face.
- 45- You (**can – should – may – might**) have gone and got some bread before the shop closed.
- 46- I (**have to – must – might – can't**) study Spanish. I haven't decided yet.
- 47- He made a mistake and I didn't tell his father although I (**must – could – might – will**) have told him.

- 48- I can't find the theatre tickets. They (**must have fallen – can't have fallen – had to fall – mustn't have fallen**) out of my pocket.
- 49- You (**should be – are supposed to be – must be – ought to be**) mad if you think I'm going to lend you any more money.
- 50- Those shoes are gorgeous فخم ! They (**can't have been – can't have – mustn't have – mustn't been**) cheap.
- 51- You (**mustn't – couldn't – shouldn't – shouldn't have**) telephoned me so late. I was fast asleep.
- 52- The test (**can't have – could have – might have – must have**) been very difficult. You got an A.
- 53- She feels sure that person wasn't Ahmed. This means he (**must – can't – may – should**) be Ahmed.
- 54- This is a really good book. You really (**should – ought – must – might**) to read it.
- 55- I left my glasses at school yesterday. I'm hoping someone (**must have – might have – can't have – can have**) found them.
- 56- You (**shouldn't – must – should – ought to**) drive. You're too tired.
- 57- No one is sure where Ali is, but we think he (**might have – must have – can't have – must**) gone to see his uncle.
- 58- They left two hours ago, so they (**must – can't have – must have – can't**) arrived by now. It is not far.
- 59- I'm absolutely sure! They (**must arrive – could arrive – should have arrived – must have arrived**) yesterday, I saw their tickets.
- 60- Are you sure he left the country? – No, I only say he (**must – can't – might – didn't**) have.
- 61- I (**could – may – can't – must**) have bought that car, but I decided to look at a few others.
- 62- The streets are wet. It (**must rain – can't rain – must have rained – should have rained**) last night.
- 63- Passing his driving test (**shall – can – must – mustn't**) have made Ahmed happy.
- 64- Ali wasn't at the meeting. He (**must – can't – shouldn't – might**) have read my e-mail in which I asked him to come.
- 65- She (**must have – might have – have to have – doesn't have**) rung me this morning. I'm not sure.
- 66- Ali (**must – mustn't – can't – might**) have forgotten. He's got very good memory.
- 67- The boss is in a terrible mood. The meeting (**might – must – can't – may**) have been good.
- 68- If you've been trying to lose weight, then you really (**should – might – can't – must**) have eaten all that ice cream.

Exercises on Unit 15

2) Read the passage then answer the questions:

Call me old-fashioned. Call me old. Call me what you want, but I refuse to become part of this new Internet world. I don't possess a computer at home or at the office. Actually, I stopped going to an office 35 years ago, when all communications were done in a relaxed manner, with a pen, a typewriter, or, if the matter was of world-shaking importance, over the telephone. Tell me what you think of the following ad that appeared the other day in the newspaper. It was for a cure for cancer and this is what it said: "Awareness is the key. Visit spfulford.com at the awareness site." There was no address or telephone number for the site. So what do unfortunate people without a computer do if they are seeking a cure for their illness?

There are, I am told, certain advantages in having access to the latest marvel of the age, the internet. There are activities for Internet users besides having fun. They can pay bills, order groceries, or discuss illness with their doctor. In the future the Internet may develop "consciousness." In other words, the Internet can think, have feelings, and may well be able to act on its own. If this is right, I may change my attitude about computers. As I grow older each day, I would like a gadget that not only thinks for me but also accepts responsibility for all my mistakes.

A) Choose the correct answer :

- 1- The Internet may develop "consciousness" means it will be able to
 - a) cure diseases
 - b) take responsibility for our action
 - c) pay bills
 - d) think for the writer
- 2- When the writer was younger, people communicated with each other by
 - a) the web
 - b) letters or the phone
 - c) computers
 - d) mobiles
- 3- The writer to use the internet .
 - a) likes
 - b) refuses
 - c) stops
 - d) agrees
- 4- Some people regard the internet as the of the age.
 - a) marvel
 - b) invent
 - c) demerit
 - d) drawback
- 5- The internet provides its users with activities as well as
 - a) fine
 - b) fins
 - c) fun
 - d) funnel
- 6- The writer wants a gadget to be for all his mistakes.
 - a) irresponsible
 - b) in charge
 - c) responsibility
 - d) responsible

B) Answer the following questions :

- 7- What did the writer think was wrong with the Internet ad for a cancer cure?
- 8- What are three things that people do on the Internet?
- 9- Which of the writer's points of view do you disagree with?
- 10- Suggest a title to the passage.

4) Complete the following dialogue :

Tourist : What are the most interesting places I can visit in Cairo?

Ahmed :

Tourist :?

Ahmed : Because the Egyptian Museum has a lot of wonderful statues.

Tourist :?

Ahmed : I recommend visiting Upper Egypt after that.

Tourist : I have heard that third of the world's monuments are found in Luxor!

Ahmed :

Tourist : Ok , I will visit the wonderful places there.

Ahmed :

Tourist : What is special about visiting Aswan ?

Ahmed :

5) Write a paragraph of (120) words on ONE of the following:

- a) How to attract tourists to visit Egypt.
- b) The Underground.

6) A) Translate into Arabic :

- 1- Peace means absence of war and violence, while others see that it represents the quest for inner peace and security.
- 2- Egypt enjoys an ancient civilisation so we should keep our cultural heritage.
- 3- The government is trying to solve traffic problems by constructing new roads and flyovers.
- 4- The Great Wall of China was built according to the emperor's orders. It was built to protect China from the raiders.
- 5- The Great Wall of China is regarded as the longest graveyard in history.

B) Translate into English :

- 1- يعتبر إنقاذ معابد أبو سمبل عمل هندسي عظيم.
- 2- يعتبر سور الصين العظيم من أهم عجائب العالم القديم
- 3- لا بد أن نعيد النظر في الخريطة السكانية لمصر ونشجع الناس علي الانتقال إلي المدن الجديدة.
- 4- بدأت الحكومة المصرية حملة لاستعادة آثارها من الدول الأجنبية.
- 5- يعتبر مترو الأنفاق واحدا من أعظم الانجازات الهندسية، و هو يسهم مساهمة عظيمة في حل مشكلة المواصلات في القاهرة الكبرى.
- 6- تملك مصر الكثير من الآثار التاريخية العظيمة التي يأتي إليها السياح من كل أنحاء العالم لزيارتها والاستمتاع برويتها.

Unit 16: The Importance of Trees

Key Vocabulary

harden	ينشف / يصبح صلبا	rubber	مطاط
ring	حلقة	sap	عصارة النبات
tube	أنبوب (لنقل المياه والمواد الكيماوية)	toothpaste	معجون أسنان
cardboard	ورق مقوى / كرتون	turpentine	زيت لازالة الدهان (تنر)
width	عرض / اتساع	instrument	أداة (موسيقية / علمية)
extract	يستخرج / يستخلص	calculate	يحسب (العمر / الطول ...)
bark	اللحاء	products	منتجات
roots	الجزور	valuable	قيم
branches	الفروع	cells	خلايا
leaves	الأوراق	fruit	ثمرة / ثمار
trunk	الجذع	seeds	بذور

Vocabulary

fertilisers	أسمدة	count	يعد (السنين / الحلقات ...)
shelter	مأوى / ملجأ	dig	يحفر في الارض
fuel	وقود	drill	يحفر بآلة أو جهاز
heating	التدفئة	remove	يزيل
fence	سور	operate	يشغل
soil	تربة	freeze	يتجمد
furniture	الأثاث	flood	يفيض / فيضان
sequoia	شجر طويل ينمو في كاليفورنيا	pick	يقطف
chemicals	مواد كيميائية	melt	يذوب
nuts	الجوز	breathe	يتنفس
coconuts	جوز الهند	damage	يدمر / دمار
soft	ناعم / أملس	irrigate	يروي
pipe	أنبوبة	queue	طابور
living	حي	diamond	الماس
stick	عصا	especially	خاصة
brush	فرشاة	materials	مواد
hammer	مطرقة / شاكوش	unanswered	غير مجابة
demonstrate	يوضح / يشرح	sandstorm	عاصفة رملية
thin / giant	رفيع / عملاق	palm tree	اشجار النخيل
quite narrow	ضيق الى حد ما	press ... down	يضغط لأسفل
car tyre	اطار السيارة	alternatives	بدائل
high / height	مرتفع / ارتفاع	label	بطاقة أو ملصقة صغيرة

global warming	الاحتباس الحرارى	paint remover	مزيل الطلاء
cardboard box	صندوق من الكرتون	rubber gloves	قفاز من المطاط

Prepositions & Expressions

move (on) to	ينتقل / نتحول إلي	do no damage to	لا يسبب ضرر إلي
covered in / with / by	مغطى بـ	Be badly-damaged	مُحطم بطريقة سيئة
play (on) an instrument	يعزف علي آلة	make a list of	يعد قائمة بـ
keep away from	يبعد عن	Believe it or not	صدق أو لا تصدق
By the way,	بالمرة / بالمناسبة	drill into	يحفّر / يتقبّ في
depend on = rely on	يعتمد علي	a tall tree	شجرة طويلة / عالية
cut down	يقطع / يزيل	take in	يمتص
In this way,	وبهذه الطريقة	read out	يقرأ بصوت عالي
fall over	يسقط / يتمايل	give out	يوزع / يخرج / يطلق
put.....into	يضع...في	provide with	يمد بـ / يزود بـ
Be made from	مصنوع من	tie....to	يربط....في
Be made out of	مصنوع من	example of	مثال لـ
a set of instructions	مجموعة تعليمات	along the sides of	علي جانبي ...
do good to	يعود بالفائدة علي	put out fire	يُطفئ النيران
carry from .. to	ينقل من .. إلي	put down roots	يستقر في مكان ما

Antonyms

narrow	ضيّق	wide	واسع / عريض
soft	ناعم / أملس	hard	صلب
freeze	يتجمّد	melt	ينوب
deep	عميق	shallow	ضحل
sweet	حلو	bitter	مر
popular	شعبي / محبوب	unpopular	غير شعبي / غير محبوب

Derivatives

Verb	فعل	Noun	اسم	Adjective	صفة
harden	يجعل صلبا	hardness	صلابة	hardened	متصلب
widen	يوسع	width	اتساع / عرض	wide	واسع / عريض
strengthen	يقوى	strength	قوة	strong	قوى
shorten	يقصر	shortness	قصر	short	قصير
sharpen	يبرى القلم	sharpness	حدة	sharp	حاد
lengthen	يطول	length	طول	long	طويل
deepen	يعمق	depth	عمق	deep	عميق

Words go together

give instructions	يعطي تعليمات	sports equipment	أجهزة رياضية
set rules	يضع قواعد	musical instruments	آلات موسيقية
rules and regulations	قواعد و لوائح	international community	مجتمع دولي
natural world	عالم طبيعي	tropical rainforests	الغابات الاستوائية
witness a great shift	يشهد تحولا كبيرا	spread awareness	ينشر الوعي

Read the following carefully

Listening :

Presenter: Hello. If you listened to last week's Natural World, you would know that we had a lot of unanswered questions about trees. So this week, we have invited Professor Jeremy Beech to answer these and other questions about trees. Welcome to the programme, Professor.

Prof. Beech: Hello.

Presenter: Can we have our first question, please?

Female caller: Hello. I'd like to ask the professor about the tallest tree in the world. Where is it and how tall is it?

Prof. Beech: The tallest tree in the world is a Giant Sequoia and it's in California. It's 83.8 meters tall. Scientists say it is between 2.300 and 2.700 years old.

Presenter: That's incredible! Now, let's move on to our second caller.

Boy caller: Hello. I know a tree's leaves help it to take in light from the sun. But I'd like to ask what the bark of a tree does.

Prof. Beech: Well, the bark is like our skin - it protects the living part of the tree and the tubes which carry water from a tree's roots to its leaves. If the bark is badly damaged, the tree dies. Animals such as goats love eating bark, so it's especially important to keep animals away from young trees.

Presenter: Thank you. What's the next question?

Male caller: Hi. I'd like to ask: how is it possible to calculate the age of a tree by counting its rings?

Presenter: Good question. Perhaps you could start by explaining what the rings are that this caller is talking about.

Prof. Beech: Well, most trees grow bigger every year. Just under the bark, there's a circle of soft cells which hardens every spring or summer. This forms a ring of new wood each year. This means we can calculate the age of the tree by counting rings.

Presenter: You will see the rings if you cut the tree down. But how do you do this without killing the tree?

Prof. Beech: We can drill into the tree to make a deep, narrow hole. Then, we extract a very thin piece of wood. This does no damage to the tree.

Presenter: And are the rings the same width every year?

Prof. Beech: No, they aren't. The width of the ring depends on the climate and the amount of rain. If there's a lot of rain during the year, the rings are quite wide. If it's a dry year, the rings are narrower. In this way, we can find out what the weather was like hundreds of years ago when the tree was younger.

Presenter: Really? Well, I'm afraid that's all we have time for in today's programme. Thanks for talking to us, Professor Beech.

Reading : Why do we need Trees

If you ask people why we need trees, most of them will answer: "We need wood from trees for building houses"; "We get fruit and nuts from trees"; "We make paper out of wood from trees"; "We can use wood as a fuel for cooking and heating". Recently, people have added a more serious reason to this list: "Trees help the earth to breathe" or "They protect us from global warming".

It has been said that more than 5.000 things in everyday use are made from trees. Here are a few of them: furniture, sports equipment, pencils, magazines and newspapers, cardboard boxes, musical instruments and- believe it or not- some kinds of toothpaste.

In addition to these uses, trees also give us valuable chemicals. Turpentine, which is used as a paint remover, is made from the sap of trees.

Sap can also be used to make rubber. If wood is heated, chemicals are produced which can be used to make medicines and some kinds of plastic. Wood products can also be turned into paper, cardboard and materials from which clothes can be made. You may be surprised to hear that wood products are also used in some types of ice cream and other foods.

So, the next time you are reading a newspaper, eating an ice cream, playing the piano or cleaning your teeth, just stop and think: how would you manage to do these things if there were no trees?

Definitions

bark	the hard outside part of a tree
harden	to become firm or stiff
ring	an object in the shape of a circle
tube	a pipe that liquids or gases go through
roots	the parts of trees that grow under the ground and find water
calculate	to find out something or measure something by using numbers
extract	to remove something

width	the distance from one side of something to the other
branches	they grow out of a trunk of a tree to support leaves and fruits
fruit	grows on a plant or tree and has seeds inside
leaves	are the flat green parts at the ends of the branches of a tree
cardboard	very stiff thick paper, used especially for making boxes
products	things that are made or grown to be sold
rubber	a substance used for making tyres, boots, etc.
sap	the liquid that carries food through plants and trees
toothpaste	substance used for cleaning your teeth
turpentine	a strong-smelling liquid used for removing paint
valuable	very useful or important

Language Notes

climate	المناخ (حالة الجو خلال فترة زمنية طويلة) ثابت
weather	الطقس (حالة الجو خلال فترة زمنية قصيرة) متغير
atmosphere	الغلاف الجوي : ما يحيط بالأرض أو المكان

Ex: We are retiring to the Maldives because we like a sunny **climate**.

What's the **weather** like this morning?

A lot of harmful smoke is released into the **atmosphere** by factories.

ground	أرض (خارج المنزل)
floor	أرضية (المنزل)
soil	تربة (تلقى فيها البذور)

Ex: There is a great hole in the **ground** behind my house.

The glass fell off the table and scattered **ينتثر** on the **floor**.

Some plants grow in a muddy **soil**.

made of	مصنوع من (المادة المصنوع منها الشيء لا تتغير و نراها)
made from	مصنوع من (المادة المصنوع منها الشيء تتغير و لا نراها)
made in	مصنوع في (سنة / مكان)
made by	مصنوع بواسطة (شخص أو دولة أو شركة)

Ex: She bought a bag **made of** leather.

Bread is **made from** flour.

This car was **made in** 2009 in Italy.

لاحظ استخدام المقطع en في بداية أو نهاية بعض الكلمات لتكوين الفعل:					
wide	widen	يوسع	courage	encourage	يشجع
threat	threaten	يهدد	danger	endanger	يعرض للخطر
strong	strengthen	يقوى	large	enlarge	يكبر - يضخم
cheap	cheapen	يخفض السعر	able	enable	يمكن
length	lengthen	يطول	rich	enrich	يثري
hard	harden	يجعله صلبا	short	shorten	يقصر

else	تستخدم بعد الكلمات التي تبدأ بـ (any – every – no – some) و تستخدم بعد أدوات الاستفهام (what / who / why / where)
-------------	---

Ex: What else do you need? Do you want anything else?

connect something to something	يوصل بجهاز
connect someone / thing with something	يوصل / يرتبط بـ
contact	يتواصل مع communicate with

Ex: First **connect** the printer **to** the computer.
The railway link would **connect** Tanta **with** Cairo.
There was nothing to **connect** him **with** the crime.
Please do not hesitate to **contact** me if you need anything.
We can **communicate with** other people through the internet.

hear (يسمع (سماع عارض - بدون قصد)	hear about يسمع - يتلقى معلومات عن
hear from يتلقى رسالة من	hear of يعرف بوجود شخص أو شيء

Ex: When I was walking in the street I **heard** someone crying.
Have you **heard from** Ahmed? You will **hear about** this later.
She disappeared and was never **heard of** again.

a piece of wood قطعة خشب	لاحظ أن كلمة wood هي اسم لا يعد و لا يسبقه a و يمكن أن يسبق بـ a lot of / much / a piece of / some
------------------------------------	--

Ex: I need **some** wood. I need **a piece of** wood.

help + مصدر + (to) + مفعول	help + اسم + مفعول + with
-----------------------------------	----------------------------------

Ex: My father **helped me (to) do** my homework.
My father **helped me with my** homework.

- عند التعبير عن القياس (الطول والعرض والارتفاع والعمق) نستخدم : 1- الصفة فقط. أو 2- الأسم مسبقا بحرف الجر in

The wall is two metres **high**. / **in height**.

Spot the difference

toothpaste	معجون أسنان	toothache	ألم أسنان
rubber	مطاط	robber	سارق
root	جذر	route	طريق
hole	حفرة	whole	كل
tube	انبوية	tub	حوض / جردل
bark	لحاء / ينبج	park	حديقة عامة
valuable	قيم	available	متاح

Language Functions

Asking for instructions	Giving instructions
How can I operate this coffee machine?	First switch it on, then press اضغط على the red button.
Can you show me how to use this vacuum cleaner?	First, connect it to the electricity supply. After that, press the red button
How does (this machine) work?	First / Then..../ Next..../ Finally....

Choose the correct answer:

1. The world's (**widest – tallest – deepest – highest**) tree is nearly 84 metres tall.
2. The tallest tree is between two and three (**hundreds – thousands – thousand – millions**) years old.
3. Tubes carry water from the (**roots – bark – leaves – trunk**) to the leaves.
4. Goats and other animals can (**feed – die – kill – eat**) trees by damaging the bark.
5. Every year, soft (**cells – tubes – seeds – leaves**) below the bark of a tree form new wood.
6. Rings of new (**trunk – fruit – wood – bark**) grow in a tree each year.
7. When a thin piece of wood is removed from a tree, (**most – no – a lot of – much**) damage is done to the tree.
8. The more rain there is in a year, the (**narrower – wider – smaller – thinner**) the tree rings are.
9. The (**leaves – bark – tubes – roots**) are the parts of trees that grow under the ground and find water.
10. The hard outside part of a tree is called the (**bark – sap – branch – trunk**).
11. (**Branches – Leaves – Roots – Seeds**) are the flat green parts at the ends of the branches of a tree.
12. A (**leaf – bark – fruit – tube**) grows on a plant or tree and has seeds inside.
13. Every year, trees grow extra (**bracelet – earrings – necklaces – rings**) of new wood.
14. Every year, the cells under the bark (**hard – herd – harden – burden**) and become new wood.
15. This road is too narrow for cars, so they are going to (**shorten – sharpen – harden – widen**) it.
16. The old bridge is very weak. They will have to (**lengthen – strengthen – narrow – weaken**) it soon.
17. My new trousers are too long, so my mother is going to (**broaden – widen – deepen – shorten**) them.

18. That film is so popular that the queues to see it (**widen – strengthen – lengthen – long**) every day.
19. Some people believe that trees protect the world from global (**warm – warmer – warming – warms**).
20. Furniture, sports equipment and magazines are examples (**from – in – on – of**) things made from wood.
21. People use turpentine to (**remove – release – mix – fix**) paint.
22. Turpentine is made from the (**fruit – bark – roots – sap**) of trees.
23. Medicines and plastics can be made from (**rubber – perfumes – wood – chemicals**) we get from trees.
24. Some types of ice cream are made with wood (**production – products – producing – productive**).
25. To (**calculate – count – discount – communicate**) is to find out something by using numbers.
26. The knife doesn't cut very well. I need to (**sharp – sharpen – sharpening – sharpens**) it.
27. The liquid that carries food in trees is called (**tap – nap – sap – lap**).
28. A violin is a musical (**instrument – equipment – machine – technique**).
29. Many boxes are made (**of – in – by – from**) cardboard.
30. Egypt exports a lot of (**conducts – instructs – deducts – products**) to other countries.
31. I (**included – excluded – calculated – valued**) that we would arrive there at 6. p.m.
32. The oil which is (**extracted – retreated – contacted – conducted**) from olives is used for cooking.
33. The garden is 20 metres in (**wide – widen – width – the wide**).
34. This firm has (**leaves – trunks – branches – roots**) in many cities.
35. A lot of medicines come from tropical (**rainforests – rainbows – raindrops – rainfalls**).
36. Cutting (**in – of – away – down**) trees causes damage to the environment.
37. We should plant more trees (**along – beneath – off – above**) the sides of streets.
38. Five trees fell (**on – over – to – in**) in the storm.
39. After travelling around the world, she felt it was time to put down (**roots – branches – trunks – leaves**) somewhere.
40. You have to obey all the (**roles – reels – rails – rules**) and regulations.
41. The (**weather – climate – atmosphere – sky**) was so cold yesterday, so we didn't go out.
42. They (**drilled – pulled – called – felled**) into the tree and extracted a thin piece of wood.
43. Most trees (**die – live – grow – reach**) bigger every year.

44. The (**width – health – wealth – filth**) of the rings of trees depends on the climate and the rain.
45. The (**tapes – tunnels – tubes – channels**) carry water from a tree's roots to its leaves.
46. The bark (**destroys – demolishes – protects – hides**) the living part of the tree.
47. He used a paint (**remove – removal – removing – remover**) to clean his shirt.
48. My hands (**hardened – awakened – broadened – lengthened**) when I was working on the farm.
49. We can determine the (**length – width – age – disease**) of a tree by counting the rings.
50. We need three test (**taps – tips – tubes – tops**) for this experiment.
51. Car tyres and the bottoms of some shoes are made (**of – in – by – from**) rubber.
52. The tree's leaves help it to take (**in – of – to – off**) light from the sun.
53. This cream contains (**excludes – extracts – extinguishes – expands**) from several plants.
54. The tallest tree is (**between – into – over – among**) two and three thousand years old.
55. We can make paper (**off – about – out – down**) of wood.
56. Wood can be used as a (**fuel – feeling – filling – feel**) for cooking and heating.
57. Trees help to (**rise – raise – decrease – increase**) pollution.
58. People put some (**toothpaste – cream – tablets – pills**) on their brush to clean their teeth.
59. The (**root – trunk – fruit – bark**) is the strongest part of the tree.
60. Trees provide us (**for – with – by – of**) many useful things from rubber to medicines.
61. (**Leaves – Barks – Roots – Branches**) fall from some trees in autumn.
62. It is important to keep animals (**away – out – off – on**) from young trees.
63. The river can be used by many ships because of its (**wide – width – widening – widened**).
64. Scientists tell the age of a tree by (**calculating – counting – adding – widening**) the rings in the trunk.
65. The function of the (**seed – root – trunk – leave**) is to hold the tree in the ground.
66. The (**length – width – height – depth**) of a ring indicates whether there was drought or rainfall in a particular area.
67. (**In – By – On – At**) the way, have you seen Ali recently?
68. The (**circle – round – bing – ring**) road is very long and useful.

Language Focus

Conditionals الجمل الشرطية

Zero Conditional **الحالة الصفرية**

نستخدم الحالة الصفرية لوصف أحداث تكون عادة دائمة أو حقيقة أو قانون ثابت ولاعطاء توجيهات وارشادات و في هذه الجمل نلاحظ أن **if = when** :

If + مضارع بسيط → مضارع بسيط

- If water **is heated** to 100° c, it **boils**.
- If water **freezes**, it **turns** into ice.
- If you **click** on the blue button, the answer **appears**.
- **If / When** I read in bed, I fall asleep. It's a habit.

First Conditional **الحالة الأولى**

If + مضارع بسيط أو تام → will / shall + inf.

• تعبر الحالة الأولى عن أحداث محتملة في المستقبل :

- If the bus **arrives** late again, I'll **phone** my mother.
- Tarek is ill. If he's better **tomorrow**, he'll **come** to school.

• كما تعبر الحالة الأولى عن احتمال حقيقي في المضارع :

- If you're hot, I'll **buy** you a cool drink.

• يمكن استخدام can / may / might / must / should / have to حسب المعنى :

- If we **have** enough time, we **can visit** Ahmed.

• يمكن أن يكون جواب الشرط أمر أو طلب :

- If you **see** Asmaa, **give** her this message, please.

• يمكن استخدام it is + adj. + to + inf. في الجزء الثاني من الجملة في الحالة الأولى :

- If you **go** to Cairo, **it is possible to** find work.

• لاحظ صيغة السؤال مع if في الحالة الأولى :

- **What will you do** if you **win** a lot of money?

Second Conditional **الحالة الثانية**

If + ماضى بسيط → would / could / might + inf.

◆ تعبر الحالة الثانية عن موقف غير محتمل حدوثه أو شيء مناقض للواقع أو حالة وهمية :

- If I **was / were** rich, I **would build** a palace!
- If Egypt **had** a lot of rain, it **might have** a lot more trees.
- If I **were** a bird, I **would** fly.

◆ تستخدم هذه الحالة للتعبير عن النصيحة :

- You **should** read this useful book. = **If I were you**, I'd read this useful book.

◆ لاحظ أننا نستخدم were مع كل الضمائر الجمع والمفرد :

- **If I was / were** offered a ticket, I'd take it.

◆ وفى حالة السؤال :

What + would + فاعل + do + if + (ماضى بسيط) ؟

- What would you do if your car was stolen? - I'd tell the police.

◆ لاحظ ان had / would have فقط بدون P.P حالة ثانية :

- If I **had** enough time, I'd **read** more novels.

- We'd **have** enough time if we **worked** online.

Third Conditional الحالة الثالثة

If + ماضى تام (had + PP.) → (would / could / might / should) have + PP.

◆ الحالة الثالثة تعبر عن مواقف مستحيلة لأنها لم تحدث أو مستحيل تغييرها :

- If you **had gone** to the sports club, you **would / could / might have seen** Ali.

- If I'd **had** enough money yesterday, I'd **have bought** that mobile phone.

◆ يمكن أن تأتي if فى منتصف الجملة فى جميع الحالات :

- He **would have seen** the Statue of Liberty if he **had travelled** to New York.

◆ فى الجملة التالية كلمتى written / broken صفة لما بعدهما وبالتالي فهى حالة ثانية :

- If she **had written** work, she **would do** it at once.

- If the house **had broken windows**, we'd **repair** them.

◆ لاحظ الأفعال الثابتة فى تصريفاتها الثلاثة او الاول والثالث :

- If he **read** novels for Dickens, he'd **realise** the truth.

- If they'd **invited** me, I'd **have come** to their party.

Choose the correct answer :

1- If you heat ice, it (**will melt – would melt – melt – melts**).

2- If there is a sandstorm tonight, I (**will watch – watch – would watch – watches**) it.

3- If you hadn't caught that train, you (**can – could – must – will**) have taken the next one.

4- If the wind was very strong, a lot of trees (**will – would – may – should**) fall.

5- If you listened to last week's Natural World, you would (**known – knows – know – knew**) that we had a lot of unanswered questions about trees.

6- If you (**lives – have lived – lived – had lived**) at the time that these trees started growing, you would have seen people build some ancient temples!

- 7- If the bark of a tree was destroyed, the tree (**will die – dies – would have died – would die**).
- 8- You (**will see – sees – would have seen – saw**) the rings if you cut the tree down.
- 9- If those goats eat the bark on the trees, the trees (**are dying – will die – die – dies**).
- 10- If the people (**don't get – won't get – haven't got – wouldn't get**) enough food, they become ill.
- 11- If water freezes, it (**turn – turned – turns – will turn**) to ice.
- 12- If it went on raining for much longer, the river (**will flood – would have flooded – had flooded – would flood**).
- 13- If the farmer's fields (**got – are getting – get – will get**) very dry this summer, he will irrigate them.
- 14- If scientists study the rings of trees, they (**would – could – can – should**) find information about our climate in the past.
- 15- If there wasn't much rain in a year, the rings of a tree (**will be – would be – may be – can be**) close together.
- 16- If they had extracted a thin piece of wood from the tree, they (**can calculate – could calculate – could have calculated – calculate**) its age .
- 17- If a tree has deep roots, it (**will – won't – don't – can**) fall over in strong wind.
- 18- If you pick those apples now, they (**won't – wouldn't – don't – didn't**) taste very sweet.
- 19- If you leave now, you (**catch – will catch – would catch – must have caught**) the train.
- 20- If you mix red and white, you (**may get – gets – would get – get**) pink.
- 21- Water freezes if the temperature (**is – was – had been – will be**) zero or below.
- 22- I get a headache if I (**will spend – spent – am spending – spend**) too long on the computer.
- 23- If she (**train – will train – trains – has trained**) hard, she will win next week's race.
- 24- If the mobile I had (**had – had been – was – had had**) a problem, I'd have asked your help .
- 25- If you (**throw – threw – have thrown – had thrown**) that stone, you would have broken the window.
- 26- If you practise a sport, you (**will get – would get – gets – get**) better at it.

- 27- If you practice a sport, you (**will get – would get – gets – get**) in the sports team.
- 28- If you look at the sun, you (**would – will – would have – might have**) damage your sight.
- 29- If there (**had been – were – are – have been**) clouds in the sky tonight, you will not be able to see the moon.
- 30- If it had been an eclipse, the sky (**would have gone – will go – might go – should go**) dark.
- 31- If I (**had discovered – discovered – discover – have discovered**) a new planet, I would give it my mother's name.
- 32- If you watch the sky on a clear night, you (**won't – can – shall – can't**) see stars and planets.
- 33- If the sun didn't give heat and light, there (**won't be – may not be – wouldn't be – can't be**) any life on Earth.
- 34- It's better for your eyes (**without – in case of – were – if**) you wear glasses.
- 35- If you had stayed so long in the sun, you (**would get – wouldn't get – would have got – wouldn't have got**) burnt.
- 36- If it had been warm and sunny yesterday, I (**go – might go – would have gone – will go**) swimming.
- 37- If going to England hadn't been available, I (**wouldn't have met – would have met – would meet – wouldn't meet**) my pen friend.
- 38- If we (**take – took – had taken – takes**) the temperature at the sun's centre, we'd find it was 15 million degrees.
- 39- If he had looked at the sun, he (**won't have – will have – wouldn't have – would have**) damaged his sight.
- 40- If I were you, I (**shall – would – should – will**) listen to the weather forecast before deciding where to go tomorrow.
- 41- I wouldn't watch an eclipse if it (**is – was – had been – wasn't**) on TV.
- 42- If you look through a telescope, you (**could – can – might – would**) see stars and planets.
- 43- If it (**were – was – is – had been**) cloudy, we may not see the eclipse.
- 44- If there (**was – is – had been – has been**) a solar eclipse in my country, I would definitely watch it.
- 45- Remember to keep your receipt (**in case of – unless – without – if**) you want to change the goods.
- 46- I wouldn't say it unless it (**is – does – did – were**) true.
- 47- What (**will – may – can – would**) you do if it rained next June?

- 48- If there (**were – are – weren't – was**) blood banks, many people would die.
- 49- If she hadn't learned how to type, she (**would have written – will write – wouldn't have written – would write**) so many books.
- 50- If you had come ten minutes later, I (**would have left – will leave – leave – would leave**) without seeing you.
- 51- If you (**would have left – leave – had left – left**) earlier, you wouldn't have missed your train.
- 52- If I (**finishes – have finished – would finish – finished**) this essay tonight, I'll go to the cinema.
- 53- If I (**had been – have been – am – were**) you, I'd tell him the truth.
- 54- (**Will – Did – Would – Can**) he understand the lesson if he read the summary?
- 55- If you heat water to 100 ° C, it (**could boil – will boil – would boil – boils**).
- 56- If a tree (**have – had – will have – has**) deep roots, it won't fall over in strong winds.
- 57- If you (**picked – will pick – had picked – pick**) those apples now, they won't taste very sweet.
- 58- If there (**isn't – weren't – hadn't been – wasn't**) any rain, fields get dry.
- 59- If you're hot, I (**will buy – might buy – bought – would buy**) you a cool drink.
- 60- If it (**is – was – are – had been**) a dry year, the tree rings are narrower.
- 61- If you heat water, it (**will change – changed – changes – would change**) into steam.
- 62- (**If – Unless – In case of – Without**) the sun's disappearance, there would be no life on Earth.
- 63- What (**happens – would happen – happened – will happen**) if a storm hit the coast of Egypt?
- 64- If you take this medicine, you (**won't – may – would – could**) get better.
- 65- What would have happened if there (**was – were – have been – had been**) a flood here?
- 66- I would go to the moon if I (**am asked – were asked – have been asked – had been asked**).
- 67- If you (**read – are reading – were reading – reads**) quickly, you learn quickly, too.
- 68- If you plant a tree, it (**help – is helping – might help – helps**) the world to breathe.
- 69- If you plant a tree, it (**will look – looks – is looking – might have looked**) lovely in a few years.
- 70- (**If – Unless – Were – But for**) he got a good fortune, she'd marry him.

Exercises on Unit 16

2) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

For most of us, the idea of soup which stops us getting ill, or crisps which relax us seems like something from a science-fiction film. However, these food products known as "functional foods" may already be on your supermarket's shelves.

In today's world, we all know that our diet affects our health. Therefore, food companies are taking advantage of this fact. They have already started to use ingredients in their products which will offer extra health benefits to their customers. For example, orange juice already contains vitamin C, but now you can buy orange juice with added calcium to strengthen your bones and teeth.

Of course, there are people who believe that functional foods are a bad idea. They claim that products such as these can be dangerous, as people may end up taking more vitamins than they need and may damage their bodies as a result. Nevertheless, functional foods are becoming increasingly popular, and supporters feel that it won't be long before there are foods which prevent cancer, protect eyesight and much more.

A) Choose the correct answer :

- 1- Food which gives us extra benefits is known as food.
a) job b) functional c) factual d) fact
- 2- Adding calcium to orange juice strengthen our
a) bodies b) bones only c) muscles d) teeth and bones
- 3- people believe that functional food is bad.
a) All b) Neither c) Some d) half
- 4- Some food companies benefit from functional foods by.....
a) offering extra health advantages to their customers.
b) reducing vitamins in their products.
c) helping customers save more money.
d) helping customers consume more food.
- 5- In the future , functional food may protect us from diseases like cancer.
a) curable b) cure c) incurable d) cured
- 6- A suitable title for the passage can be
a) "The Advantages of Functional Foods"
b) "The Disadvantages of Functional Foods"
c) "Functional Foods in Science Fiction"
d) "A New Type of Foods"

B) Answer the following questions:

7- Why are some people against functional foods?

8- What are the advantages of functional foods?

9- Would you like your regular meals to include functional foods ? Why?

10- Why do people support functional food?

4) Complete the following dialogue :

Student : I think trees are very useful.

Teacher:

Student : Farmers plant trees to benefit from their shade and their fruits.

Teacher:

Student : Help the environment! How?

Teacher:

Student : Global warming? How can it reduce global warming?

Teacher:

Student : What else can trees do to us?

Teacher:

Student :

Teacher: Yes. toothpaste, ice cream, musical instruments, paper, cardboard..etc.

6) A) Translate into Arabic :

1- Poverty and social problems may lead some children to end up living in the streets.

2- The whole society should help homeless children grow up to become good citizens.

B) Translate into English :

1- إن زيادة ثاني أكسيد الكربون في الغلاف الجوي هي السبب الرئيسي للاحتباس الحراري.

2- يجب على الحكومة تشجيع مواطنيها على زراعة شجرة أو اثنتين في أراضيهم.

Why I like my neighbourhood

I really love my neighbourhood. It is a quiet place with great neighbours. For example, after most people have gone to work, you can hardly hear any noise. Of course, when the kids get home, there is some noise; but, it is relatively quiet all day in my neighbourhood. I also feel safe in my neighbourhood. The police drive around it every day and the kids play outside with no problems. Since there is not much traffic, we don't worry too much about cars. Furthermore, I can walk around my neighborhood without being afraid of someone hurting me. My neighbours are really good people; they watch out for each other. If anyone has a problem with their car or even something in their house, a neighbour is usually there to help. So, to recap, my neighborhood is a great place to live. There isn't a lot of noise, it is secure, and most of all, the neighbors are helpful. To sum up, there is no place like home with good neighbours.

Unit 17: The Pearl

Key Vocabulary

celebrity	شخص مشهور	cave	كهف
ancestor	جد / سلف	greed	الجشع
Mexico	دولة المكسيك	evil	شر / شرير
trick	خدعة / حيلة / يخدع	fire	يطلق النار
success	نجاح	offer	يعرض / عرض
correspondent	مراسل	scorpion	عقرب
economic depression	كساد اقتصادي	throw away	يتخلص من / يرمى
diver	غواص	sting / stung / stung	يلدغ
force (v)	يُجبر / يُرغم	stinging (adj.)	لاذع / قاسي / حاد
pearl	لؤلؤ	treat	يُعالج / يُعامل
publicity	دعاية / شهرة / شعبية / ذبوع	merchant	تاجر

Vocabulary

publicize	يقوم بالدعاية لـ / يُشهر	greedy	جشع / طماع
ancestral	سلفي / له علاقة بالاجداد	only chance	فرصة وحيدة
trickery	تحايل / مخادعة	treatment	علاج / معاملة
tricky	خادع / مخادع	painful	مؤلم
neighbourhood	الحي / الجيران	fear	خوف / يخاف / يخشى
Grapes of Wrath	عناقيد الغضب	poisonous	سام
influential prize	جائزة هامة	merchandise	سلع / بضائع / يتاجر في
degree	درجة علمية	wealthy	ثري
author	مؤلف	valuable	ذو قيمة
correspond	يراسل	home town	الوطن / المدينة الأم
correspondence	مراسلة	oyster	محارة / صدفة
continue	يواصل / يستمر	repairs	اصلاحات
Mexican	مكسيكي	bullet	رصاصة
cure	علاج / يعالج	persuade	يقنع
attack	يهاجم / هجوم	jewellery	مجوهرات
title	عنوان (قصة)	necklace	عقد / قلادة
disappointed	مُحبط	wedding present	هدية زفاف
situation	موقف / حالة	pharmacy	صيدلية
follow	يتبع / يراقب	decorating	تزيين / زخرفة
improve roads	يحسن الطرق	public playground	ملعب عام
hide / hid / hidden	يخفي / يختبئ	basic needs	حاجات أساسية
shelter	ملجأ / ملاذ	rare experience	خبرة نادرة

Prepositions, Idioms & Expressions

win a prize for	يفوز بجائزة في	fire guns at	يطلق النار على
be stung by	يُدغ من	do business with	يقوم بعمل تجارى مع
play a trick on	يقوم بحيلة ضد	throw ... into the sea	يرمى في البحر
badly paid jobs	وظائف متدنية الاجر	take ... away from	يسلب من
become a celebrity	يصبح مشهوراً	greed for money	جشع من أجل المال
tell the truth about	يقول الحقيقة	blind to reality	غافل عن الحقيقة
finish a degree	ينهى درجة علمية	It's too late	فات الأوان
Be interested in	مهتم بـ	cry out	يصرخ بصوت عال
give ... a better life	يوفر حياة أفضل لـ	give up	يستسلم / يقلع عن
on father's side	من جانب الأب	by force	بالقوة
by mistake	عن طريق الخطأ	support ... in	يدعم ... في
go diving	يذهب للغوص	make a decision	يقرر
expert in / on / at	خبير في	be careful with	يكون حريصاً على
unfortunately not	لسوء الحظ لا	get rid of	يتخلص من
No, not at all	لا على الاطلاق	On the way to	في الطريق الى
Be respected for	يُحترم لأجل	Be not a success	ليس ناجحاً

Antonyms

ancestors	أسلاف / أجداد	descendants	أحفاد
publicity	دعاية / شهرة / شعبية / ذبوع	privacy	خصوصية
greedy	جشع / طماع	generous	كريم
greed	الجشع / الطمع	satisfaction	الرضا / القناعة
safety	أمان	danger / hazard	خطر
curable	قابل للشفاء	incurable	مستعصي / خبيث
success	النجاح	failure	الفشل
evil	الشر	good	الخير

Derivatives

Verb فعل	Noun اسم	Adjective صفة
dive – d – d	diving	diving
force	force	forceful
depress	depression	depressed
hide	hiding	hidden
celebrate	celebration	celebrated
steal	stealing	stolen

Words go together

civil war	حرب أهلية	contrary to	علي عكس
civil defence	الدفاع المدني	acute depression	اكتئاب حاد
resort to force	يلجأ الي القوة	gravitational force	قوة الجاذبية
inflation rate	معدل التضخم	annual rate	معدل سنوي
economic recovery	انتعاش اقتصادي	unexpected failure	فشل غير متوقع

Read the following carefully

Listening :

Presenter: Do you love reading but wish you knew more about the authors? In this programme we look at the lives of our greatest writers. The subject of today's programme is the American writer, John Steinbeck, whose book The Grapes of Wrath was one of the most famous novels of the twentieth century. To tell us more about John Steinbeck, we have in the studio an expert on literature, Dr Helen Carter. Dr Carter, welcome.

Dr Carter: Hello.

Presenter: I wonder if you could start by telling us something about John Steinbeck's early life.

Dr Carter: Certainly. John was born in California in 1902. His ancestors were from Europe: from Germany on his father's side and Ireland on his mother's. The name Steinbeck is German.

Presenter: What did his parents do? Were they a poor family?

Dr Carter: No, they weren't. His father worked for the government and his mother was a teacher. It was his mother who taught John to read and encouraged him to become a writer.

Presenter: What about his education? Did he go to university?

Dr Carter: Yes, he did. After High School, he went to Stanford University to study English. His parents wished he had done better there, but he left in 1925 without a degree and went to live in New York to try to become a writer.

Presenter: Did he succeed?

Dr Carter: Unfortunately not. His first three novels were not a success. He had to continue working in badly paid jobs. It was not until 1939 that he became famous, when The Grapes of Wrath won an influential prize.

Presenter: Can you explain why this novel was so successful?

Dr Carter: Well, it's a great story. But it was also a novel in which Steinbeck wrote about the lives of poor working Americans during the Great Depression of the 1930s. I think Steinbeck was respected for telling the truth about his country and for forcing people to think about the problems of the country's poor.

Presenter: So did Steinbeck then become a celebrity?

Dr Carter: No, not at all. He wished people had left him alone and hated publicity.

Presenter: Did he write any other important novels?

Dr Carter: Well, during **the Second World War**, he worked as a war correspondent for a New York newspaper, but he continued to write stories. In 1942, he wrote *The Moon is Down*, about the war in Europe, and in 1947, he wrote *The Pearl*, a short novel about a Mexican diver. Then in 1952, he wrote *East of Eden*, which Steinbeck himself thought was his best novel.

Presenter: And did he continue to write?

Dr Carter: Yes, he did, and then in 1962 he won the Nobel prize for literature. I wish he had written more books, but he died in 1968.

Presenter: Yes, I wish more authors would write as well as Steinbeck. And I wish that we could speak for longer, but that's all we have time for today.

Dr Carter: Thank you

Reading :

The Pearl: A story of greed

Kino, a Mexican pearl diver, and his wife Juana live a happy life until, one morning; their son **Coyotito is stung by** a scorpion. They take him to the local doctor, but he will not treat the boy because the family is **too poor to pay**. Juana treats the boy herself. That same day, Kino goes diving and finds an enormous pearl, which means he is now a wealthy man. However, when other people hear about the pearl, they plan to steal it.

When the doctor hears about Kino's pearl, he offers to treat Coyotito, even though Juana's treatment has already cured him. That night, someone tries to steal the pearl, so the next day Kino goes into town to sell it. The merchants say the pearl is not very valuable because it is too big. Kino knows this is a trick and so he decides to go to another town to sell the pearl.

Juana wishes Kino would throw it away because she believes it is evil and fears that it will destroy the family, but Kino refuses. He wants it to pay for his son's education.

On their way to the other town, the family are followed by thieves who want the pearl. Juana and Coyotito hide in a mountain cave, but Coyotito cries out. When the thieves hear this noise, they fire their guns at what they think is a wild animal. Kino attacks the thieves, but by now it is too late - Coyotito is dead. Kino and Juana wish they had never found the pearl. Deciding that it is evil, they return to their home town and throw it into the sea.

Definitions

correspondent	a job to report news from a place or write about a subject
ancestor	a member of your family who lived a long time ago
celebrity	a famous person , especially an actor or entertainer (singer)
depression	a long period when there is not a lot of business activity
success	when you achieve what you want or intend
force	to make someone do something they do not want to do
pearl	a valuable white round object that forms inside an oyster and is used in jewels
publicity	attention that someone or something gets from newspapers, TV,...
evil	a force that causes bad things to happen , morally bad behaviour
greed	when you want to have more money, food, power than you need
scorpion	a large insect with a curved tail that has a poisonous sting
throw away	to get rid of something that you do not want or need
merchant	someone who buys and sells large quantities of food
sting	an inset or plant touch your skin or make a very small hole in it to a feel sharp pain
treat	to give someone medical treatment for an illness or injury
trick	Something that you do to make somebody believe something which is not true
fire	To shoot bullets from a gun

Language Notes

wonder	يتساءل	wander	يتجول
---------------	--------	---------------	-------

Ex: I **wonder** if I could borrow your bike.

They spent the morning **wandering** around the old part of the city.

valuable	قيم	valuables	أشياء قيمة
-----------------	-----	------------------	------------

Ex: He was able to provide the police with some **valuable** information.

They locked their **valuables** in the hotel safe.

treat	يعالج / يعامل	cure of	يشفي (مريض / من مرض)
--------------	---------------	----------------	----------------------

Ex: He is being **treated** for a rare skin disease.

It's wrong to **treat** animals as if they had no feelings.

At one time the doctors couldn't **cure** people of some diseases.

steal	يسرق شئ	rob	يسرق مكان
rob somebody of something		يسلب شئ من شخص	

Ex: A thief **stole** my bag.

A gang **robbed** the bank yesterday.

They **robbed** him of his money.

teach / taught / taught | يعلم | learn | يتعلم

Ex: Dad **taught** me how to ride a bike. I want to **learn** about Japanese culture.

accept | يقبل | expect | يتوقع | except | ماعدا

Ex: He **accepted** an invitation to the opening-night party.
He didn't **expect** to see me. The museum is open daily **except** Monday.

inquire about | يستفسر | acquire | يكتسب | require | يتطلب

Ex: I **inquired about** the flights to Saudi Arabia. This job **requires** skill.
As long as we live, we **acquire** new knowledge and skills.

receipt | إيصال الشراء | bill | فاتورة (كهرباء / مياه / تليفون / مطعم)

Ex: Make sure you are given a **receipt** for everything you buy.
They asked the waitress for the **bill**.

instead of + v. + ing / noun | بدلا من

Ex: **Instead of doing** his homework, he watched television.
You can use milk **instead of cream** in this recipe.

لاحظ استخدام التعبيرات الآتية مع فعل tell

tell a story | يروي قصة | tell the truth | يقول الحقيقة | tell a lie / lies | يكذب
tell a joke | يروي نكتة | tell fortunes | يتنبأ بما سيحدث | tell the time | يبين الوقت
tell a secret | يُفشي سر | tell the difference | يبين الاختلاف

Ex: He is an honest man. He always **tells the truth**.
He **told** us a **story** about a greedy man.

be careful with + N. | يكون حريصا على | be careful to + inf. | يكون حذرا

be careful about (of) + what/how/when/ v. + ing | يكون حريصا بخصوص

Ex: His mother had always been **careful with** money.
He was **careful to keep** out of sight.
I'm very **careful about washing** my hands before eating
You must be **careful when** handling chemicals.

Language Functions

الاقناع Persuading

Are you sure you can't	?	Sorry, I really need it
Can't I persuade you to	?	No, I'm sorry. I
I really think you should		Yes, you are right.
Why don't you	?	I'll do that.
Please, come to I'm sure you'll enjoy it.		I'd like to come, but
Surely the best thing to do is to		Yes, I agree with you.

☒ **Choose the correct answer:**

- 1- Today's newspaper has a very interesting report from one of their (**forces – correspondents – celebrities – soldiers**) in India.
- 2- My grandmother's beautiful (**steel – stone – pearl – bronze**) necklace was a wedding present from her uncle. It cost him a lot of money.
- 3- Tarek's injury (**made – let – forced – faced**) him to stop playing football.
- 4- A well-known TV (**celebrate – celebration – celebrity – celebrated**) is opening a new supermarket in our town tomorrow.
- 5- People lost their jobs and businesses closed during that year's terrible (**depression – debate – decrease – impression**).
- 6- I found out from my grandmother that I had an (**ancestor – pharaoh – censor – sergeant**) who lived in Japan.
- 7- The book is a great (**success – failure – successful – worse**). Everyone wants to read it!
- 8- This film has had a lot of (**publication – publicity – product – privacy**). You can read reviews of it in newspapers and online.
- 9- Being (**sung – rung – stung – drunk**) by an insect is very painful.
- 10- It is difficult to see wild animals in the day because they often (**hide – appear – wake – play**).
- 11- They (**shouted – cried – fired – find**) a gun to start the race.
- 12- My brother played a (**truck – buck – tick – trick**) on me and told me that I had to go to school on Saturday this week!
- 13- The market was full of (**merchants – doctors – customers – farms**) who were selling goods from all over the country.
- 14- I (**put – threw – kept – moved**) away the newspaper this morning. I didn't know you hadn't read it.
- 15- At the pharmacy, Noha bought some medicine to (**increase – grow – carry – treat**) her headache.
- 16- Mustafa always (**offers – objects – denies – reminds**) to help his neighbours with their shopping.
- 17- Although people are frightened of them, (**scorpions – dogs – flies – cats**) don't kill many human beings.
- 18- The thieves used (**tricky – trickery – tricking – tricked**) to get the money from the tourists.
- 19- The trader wanted to examine the (**merchant – merchants – merchanting – merchandise**) before he bought it.
- 20- Don't be so (**aggressive – cruel – sleepy – greedy**)! You've eaten enough.
- 21- What's the best (**treaty – treat – treatment – heal**) for a headache?
- 22- They gave a (**stinging – sting – stung – ringing**) report about the company's problems.

- 23- An ancestor is a member of your (**family – class – village – city**) who lived a long time ago.
- 24- A (**ceremony – cigar – sincere – celebrity**) is a person who is known to a lot of people.
- 25- A (**doctor – correspondent – secretary – director**) is someone who writes reports for a newspaper, a radio station or TV.
- 26- The economic (**repression – decision – depression – compression**) is a long period when the economy of a country does badly.
- 27- To (**fort – sort – miss – force**) is to make someone do something that they don't want to do.
- 28- A (**Pearl – Gold – Silver – Copper**) is a small, round, white object that is used in jewellery.
- 29- (**Public – Private – Publicity – Pub**) is fame that someone gets from newspapers & television.
- 30- (**Failure – Fail – Success – Succession**) is when you achieve what you have been trying to do.
- 31- Can't I (**make – do – persuade – join**) you to think again about going to that university?
- 32- Instead of (**finish – finishing – finished – have finished**) his degree, he went to New York to become a writer.
- 33- In 1939, Steinbeck (**beat – won – earned – awarded**) a prize for his novel "The Grapes of Wrath".
- 34- John Steinbeck's mother's (**sons – children – descendants – ancestors**) were from Ireland.
- 35- John's mother (**supported – fought – discouraged – hit**) her son in his ambition to be a writer.
- 36- Steinbeck was not interested (**on – at – for – in**) becoming a famous person.
- 37- The (**address – title – surname – nickname**) of the 1947 novel about a diver was The Pearl.
- 38- If people have smart houses, they will take pride in their (**neighbouring – neighboured – neighbourhood – neighbourly**).
- 39- Money can make you (**blind – dead – deaf – dumb**) to reality and cause more problems.
- 40- Police are looking for the missing car. (**Drivers – Sailors – Dancers – Divers**) have been searching the river all day.
- 41- That shopkeeper's always great to (**do – make – take – work**) business with.
- 42- My friend (**stopped – prevented – persuaded – made**) me to go swimming, even though I felt ill.
- 43- You should be careful when you (**drive – live – dive – dip**) into water if you don't know how deep it is.
- 44- When he fell off the ladder, he (**cried – led – shouted – laughed**) out in pain.

- 45-A (**cottage – tunnel – cave – hut**) is a large natural hole in the side of a cliff or under the ground.
- 46-A (**greedy – speedy – thirsty – hungry**) man usually wants to have more money, food, power etc than he needs.
- 47-I shouldn't have (**thrown – done – brought – taken**) away the receipt. I need it to return this shirt.
- 48-His mother has advised him to be careful (**at – of – to – with**) his money.
- 49-Doctors are (**greeting – heating – treating – beating**) him for cancer.
- 50-After this accident, the government couldn't (**persuade – congratulate – concentrate – compensate**) people that nuclear power stations are safe.
- 51-He noticed she was wearing a string of (**rocks – dust – pearls – peels**) around her neck.
- 52-Dr Carter is an expert (**of – by – about – on**) literature.
- 53-A strong storm (**forced – treated – made – attacked**) the fishermen to sail home.
- 54-There has been a lot of (**depression – greed – celebrity – publicity**) about the new film.
- 55-If you want people to buy your book, make sure it is (**publicized – generalized – socialized – specialized**) in all the major newspapers.
- 56-Rania has been (**happy – pleased – delighted – depressed**) because she failed a test.
- 57-Jock and his wife have taken up (**dive – diving – diver – driver**), and they love it.
- 58-They had to think of a (**stick – speck – trick – truck**) to get past the guards.
- 59-Nothing would satisfy her greed (**to – for – with – of**) money.
- 60-I'll report you to the police if I catch you (**robbing – stealing – taking – getting**) again.
- 61-The officer ordered the soldiers to (**attract – attach – attack – tie**) their enemies.
- 62-We all admire him because he (**says – speaks – tells – talks**) the truth.
- 63-That old chair should be (**flown – clown – crown – thrown**) away.
- 64-The submarine (**dove – dived – drived – drove**) just in time to avoid the enemy attack.
- 65-My parents (**taught – teached – learnt – learned**) me that honesty was always the best policy.
- 66-He didn't really lose his wallet - that's just a (**truck – trick – tick – track**).
- 67-Unlike adults, children can't (**find – mind – kind – hide**) their feelings.
- 68-He was (**deal – tried – treated – seated**) with respect after his promotion.
- 69-A (**scorpion – fly – scar – star**) has a poisonous sting.
- 70-Henry was (**hanged – stung – tricked – cheated**) by a bee at the picnic.

Language Focus

I wish / If only

Wish / If only + ماضى بسيط
could + inf

للتعبير عن الأمنيات و الندم فى الحاضر أو موقف غير حقيقى فى المضارع

- He wishes he was / were taller. (He is short.)
- I wish I knew where my keys were. (I do not know where my keys are.)
- I wish I could swim under water. (I cannot swim underwater.)
- My dad wishes he owned a car. (My dad doesn't own a car.)
- I wish the weather weren't bad today. (The weather is bad today.)

Wish (ed) / If only + ماضى تام
could have + P.P

للتعبير عن الأمنيات و الندم أو موقف فى الماضى

- I wish I had read the exam question more carefully. (I did not read the exam question carefully.)
- I wish you hadn't wasted so much time. (You wasted a lot of time.)
- I wish I **hadn't ignored** my father's advice. (I **regret ignoring** his advice.)
- I wish I had joined the Faculty of Law. (I didn't join the Faculty of Law.)

◆ فى حالة وجود فعل آخر مع I wish / If only فى الماضى :

I wish / If only + ماضى بسيط → would + inf.

I wish / If only + ماضى تام → would + have + pp.

If only she **hadn't told** the police, everything **would have been** all right.

I wish he **hadn't wasted** all his money. He **would have bought** a new house.

◆ فى حالة التعبير عن المستقبل تستخدم **could + inf** مع كل الضمائر ويمكن استخدام

would مع **she / he / you / they / it**

I wish I **could** ride a horse.

I wish he **would** visit me next week.

- تعبر could عن عدم القدرة أو الاستطاعة ولكن would عن الضيق ونقد الآخرين.

◆ **wish / hope to + inf. = want to:** • I wish to see the manager, please.

If you wish to reserve a table, please telephone after 5 o'clock.

◆ **wish** ... + n. (wish someone something)

I wish you a speedy recovery. • I wish you good luck.

◆ **hope + فاعل + future simple / present simple**

I hope she **comes** tomorrow. OR: I hope she **will come** tomorrow.

◆ لاحظ: التعبيرات (I'd rather / It's time / as if) اذا تبعها فاعل يتبعها زمن مرفوع ايضا.

- He is speaking **as if** he **were** my manager. (He isn't my manager)

☞ **Choose the correct answer:**

- 1- My dad would like to have a bigger car. My dad wishes he (**will have – had had – had – had – have**) a bigger car.
- 2- My brother is sorry he didn't study medicine at university. He wishes he (**studied – would study – has studied – had studied**) it.
- 3- What a pity that they don't speak French. I wish they (**speak – spoke – will speak – had spoken**) French.
- 4- She would like to have more time. She wishes she (**could have – had had – will have – have**) more time.
- 5- She didn't listen to the teacher's advice. She's sorry now. She wishes she (**had listened – has listened – listened – would listen**) to it.
- 6- He'd like to be able to play the piano. He wishes he (**could – would – was – will be**) able to play the piano.
- 7- I wish the school holidays (**will be – were – are – was**) longer.
- 8- I wish I (**haven't forgotten – had forgotten – hadn't forgotten – didn't forget**) where I put my mobile phone.
- 9- When she was younger, Leila wished she (**could – could have – has – would**) read faster.
- 10- I'm really tired this morning. I wish I (**slept – was sleeping – had slept – could sleep**) more last night.
- 11- Ali wishes he (**might – ought to – has to – could**) come to the party, but he is not feeling well.
- 12- I wish I (**didn't – hadn't – haven't – weren't**) lent her my dictionary. She's taken it home with her.
- 13- My sister is using my pen. I wish she (**would hurry – hurried – hurry – had hurried**) up.
- 14- Ragab wishes he (**know – will know – knew – knows**) how to play a musical instrument.
- 15- She wishes she (**had had – has had – had – could have**) tennis lessons when she was younger.
- 16- I wish I (**was sleeping – have slept – will sleep – am sleeping**) better at the moment.
- 17- They wish they (**have done – could do – had done – did**) better in the test yesterday.
- 18- We wish we (**saved – could save – would save – will save**) more money for the holidays next year.
- 19- They won't tell me what happened. I wish they (**would – can – will – could**) tell me.
- 20- Kamal missed the bus yesterday. He wished he (**had – have – hadn't – haven't**) caught it.

- 21- Ola's friend wasn't waiting for her this morning. Ola wishes her friend (**had waiting – had been waiting – had wait – were waiting**) for her.
- 22- Sami didn't work hard in school and now he (**wishes – wished – wishing – wish**) he had studied more.
- 23- Jenna wishes she (**must – could – might – can**) play the guitar like Sara.
- 24- Amina wishes she had (**choose – chose – chosen – chooses**) another course. That one was very difficult for her.
- 25- Ramy wishes he (**knowing – known – knows – knew**) where he put the fifty pounds he misplaced.
- 26- Selma wants to come but she is ill and has to stay at home. She wishes she (**could have – could be – could been – could have been**) with us.
- 27- Sama regrets that she was ill yesterday and had to stay at home. She wishes she (**could have – could be – could been – could have been**) with us.
- 28- I wish the government (**will do – can do – has done – would do**) something about the heavy traffic in our cities.
- 29- I wish I (**would – could – will – can**) go to Europe with my family.
- 30- I wish it (**is – had been – has been – were**) fine today.
- 31- If only I (**was – were – had been – have been**) to Sharm El-Sheikh last summer.
- 32- He wishes he (**could visit – visits – can visit – had visited**) me tomorrow.
- 33- I don't have a mobile phone. I wish I (**have – am having – had – had had**) one.
- 34- He wished he (**had studied – was studying – has been studying – studied**) medicine at university 5 years ago.
- 35- She wishes she (**listens – is listening – would listen – had listened**) to the teacher's advice last year.
- 36- I wish I (**don't fall – couldn't fall – hadn't fallen – fell**) off my bike. I broke my leg.
- 37- If only I (**do – did – had done – have done**) more revision this year. I got very bad marks in my exams.
- 38- I just wish I (**worked – had worked – work – have been working**) harder last year. I would have earned more money.
- 39- They wish they (**hadn't spent – didn't spend – haven't spent – weren't spent**) all their money in the holidays last year.
- 40- He is short. He wishes he (**has been – had been – were – is**) taller.
- 41- We regret not (**accept – accepting – to accepted – accepted**) his offer.
- 42- I wish I (**read – have read – was reading – had read**) the exam questions more carefully yesterday.
- 43- I wish you (**didn't waste – haven't wasted – wouldn't waste – hadn't wasted**) so much time last year.
- 44- I wish I (**could – may – should – can**) play the piano.

- 45- They hope (**visiting – to visit – had visited – will visit**) us next week.
- 46- I wish I (**didn't say – wouldn't say – couldn't say – hadn't said**) those things yesterday. My friend was really upset.
- 47- I wish I (**had – have – have had – had had**) yesterday off. I'd have gone swimming.
- 48- I wish I (**were – will be – had been – am**) in Alexandria now.
- 49- If only I (**apply – applied – applies – had applied**) for that job a year ago.
- 50- I wish I (**listened – didn't listen – had listened – hadn't listened**) to him. He only wasted my time.

Exercises on Unit 17

2) Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

I have always wished that I knew more about the moon, so I did a project about it at school. The moon orbits the earth every 27.3 days – nearly once a month. However, we only see one side of it. That is because it takes about the same time for the moon to spin once as it takes for the moon to orbit the earth. The side which we do not see is called “the dark side of the moon”. However, like the earth, both sides of the moon are illuminated by the sun at different times, so it is not dark all the time. We just can't see it.

Like the sun, the moon rises in the east and sets in the west. A full moon is when we see the moon as a circle. This occurs when the moon is on the opposite side of the earth to the sun. Scientists think that there is probably some water on the moon, but there're no clouds and there's no wind. The average temperature on the moon is 107 degrees centigrade in the day and –153 degrees centigrade at night. If the astronauts who visited the moon hadn't worn spacesuits, they would have died. The moon is usually about 385,000 kilometres from earth, but its gravity makes our seas rise and fall twice a day. I wish I could visit the moon! It is not very big. The surface of the moon is about the same size as Africa. I would like to see Mons Huygens, the moon's tallest mountain, which is half as high as Mount Everest. Gravity on the moon is only 17% as strong as it is on earth. **That** means you can jump really high there!

A) Choose the correct answer :

- 1- What does the moon affect on earth?
a- the size of mountains **b-** its gravity **c-** its weather **d-** the seas
- 2- Why is one side of the moon called “the dark side of the moon”?
a- It is always dark there. **b-** It is never dark there.
c- We can't see it from earth. **d-** You can't see it from a spaceship.
- 3- What do you think would be most dangerous about visiting the moon?
a- the temperature **b-** the gravity
c- the height of the mountains **d-** the fact that it is dark
- 4- What kind of text is this?

a- a newspaper article b- a diary extract c- a novel d- a poem

5- What does the underlined word **That** refer to? – It refers to the fact that

- a- you can jump b- the moon's gravity is weaker
c- the earth's gravity is weak d- tyou are weak on the moon

6- What do you think spacesuits are?

- a- special clothes that astronauts wear b- special helmets
c- special shoes d- special hats

B) Answer the foolowing questions :

7- What is the average temperature on the moon?

8- How long is the moon's orbit around the Earth?

9- Do you think people will go to the moon for a holiday one day? Why / Why not?

10- Why do you think that we know so much about the moon?

4) Finish the following dialogue :

Samir is talking to Nabil about his new television.

Samir : ? My new TV is different to the TV we had before and I can't turn it on.

Nabil : It's the same as my TV at home.?

Samir : The remote control? Yes, it's here. OK, it's working now. Can you explain why it says it is looking for channels?

Nabil : The first time your turn it on, it downloads the channels that you need.

Samir : Look, there's a film channel. Shall we watch a film?

Nabil : I'm not sure. What time does it finish?

Samir : It finishes at seven o'clock.?

Nabil : Sorry. I told my mother I'd be home at six.

5) Write a paragraph of 120 words on ONE of the following :

- a) The problems with plastic.
b) What it would be like in a world without trees.

6) A- Translate into Arabic :

1- Social networking is a double-edged weapon, so we should use it wisely.

2- Sometimes, loving money makes one blind to reality.

B) Translate into English :

1- للشهرة العديد من المساوي اخطرها انك تكون محروماً من الاستمتاع بحياتك الخاصة.

2- عندما شعر الرجل ان اللصوص يتبعونه، اختفى داخل كهف بالجبل.

3- فى كثير من الاحيان تجلب الثروة الشر لصاحبها.

4- اتمنى اننى استطيع تغيير وظيفتى – ولكن لسوء الحظ – لا اجيد غيرها.

5- اتمنى لو استطعت حضور الحفل ولكنى لسوء الحظ كنت خارج القاهرة.

Unit 18 : The Power of Nature

Key Vocabulary

geyser	نبع ماء حار / سخان مياه	drought	الجفاف
absorb	يمتص	lightning	البرق
electrical storm	عاصفة كهربية	thunder	الرعد
directly / straight	مباشرةً / بشكل مباشر	port	ميناء
harmful (to)	ضار (ب)	phenomenon	ظاهرة
heat	حرارة / يسخن	rainfall	سقوط الامطار
sunburn	ضربة شمس	occur = take place	يحدث / يقع
eclipse	كسوف - خسوف / يسبب كسوف	violent	عنيف
beneath	تحت	cause	سبب / يسبب
degrees centigrade	درجة مئوية	northern	شمالي
ultraviolet rays	أشعة فوق بنفسجية	southern	جنوبي

Vocabulary

atmosphere	الغلاف الجوي	phenomena	ظواهر
atmospheric	جوى	phenomenal	غير عادى / استثنائي
volcano (es)	بركان	phenomenally	بشكل غير عادى
volcanic dust	غبار بركانى	fizzy drinks	مشروبات غازية
humans	البشر / الجنس البشرى	safety / safely	أمان / بأمان
storm chaser	متعقب العواصف	permanently	بشكل دائم
wear sunglasses	يرتدى نظارة شمسية	dangers	مخاطر
sight	منظر / البصر / يبصر / يرى	exactly	بالضبط
eyesight	النظر / الابصار	incredibly	بصورة لا تصدق
x-rays	اشعة أكس	hurricane / tornado	اعصار
special viewer	منظار خاص	occurrence	حدوث / واقعة
suppose	يفترض	weather forecast	النشرة الجوية
sun cream	كريم واقى من الشمس	weather experts	خبراء الطقس
unusual weather	طقس غير معتاد	ball lightning	برق على شكل كرة
extreme weather	طقس متطرف	ball of light	كرة من الضوء
hurt	يضر / يؤذى	float	يطفو
giant	ضخم / عملاق	flood	فيض / فيضان
shadow	ظل	phases	مراحل
distance	مسافة	average wind speed	متوسط سرعة الرياح
explain	يشرح / يفسر	tides	حركات المد والجزر
measure	يقيس	surface	سطح (الارض)
burn skin	يحرق البشرة	Little Ice Age	عصر جليدى صغير

heat waves	موجات حارة	bad effects	آثار شئنة
powers of nature	قوى الطبيعة	freeze	يتجمد
Antarctica	القطب الجنوبي	disappear	يختفي

Prepositions & Expressions

definitely not	بالقطع لا	on a clear night	في ليلة صافية
cause / do damage to	يسبب ضرر لـ	stay on the surface	يظل على السطح
damage sight	يؤذي / يضر البصر	falling from the sky	متساقطة من السماء
have problems with	لديه مشاكل مع	blow down / up	تهب / ينفجر
give an explanation to	يعطي تفسيراً	block out / off	تحجب
get too near	يقترّب كثيراً جداً	lift ... off feet	ترفع ... من أقدامه
at the sight of	عند رؤية ...	a clap of thunder	قصف الرعد
come into sight	في مرمى البصر	a flash of lightning	وميض البرق
life on earth	الحياة على كوكب الأرض	get burnt	يحترق
in a northerly direction	في اتجاه الشمال	go blind / go dark	يعمي / يظلم
take in	يتمص	in danger	في خطر
on condition	بشرط	go out	ينطفئ
Be right to	مُحق في أن	As far as that	لهذا الحد
wear sun cream	يضع كريم ضد الشمس	Be surprised by	يتفاجئ بـ

Antonyms

extreme	متطرف	mild / moderate	معتدل
specific	محدد	general	عام
rare	نادر	common	شائع
failure	الفشل	success	النجاح
clear	صافى (السماء)	cloudy	مغيم / ملئ بالسحب
blind	كفيف	sighted	مبصر

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adj.	
harm	يضر	harm	ضرر	harmful	ضار
				harmless	غير ضار
absorb	يتمص	absorption	امتصاص	absorbent	ماص
develop	يُطور / ينمي	development	تطور / تنمية	developed	متطور / متقدم
reduce	يقلل	reduction	تخفيض / تقليل	reduced	مُخَفَّض
dry	يجفف	dryness	تجفيف	dry	جاف
record	يسجل	record	رقم قياسي	recorded	مسجل
define	يُعرف / يحدد	definition	تعريف / تحديد	definite	واضح / محدد

Words go together

social problems	مشكلات اجتماعية	a source of relief	مصدر ارتياح
family budget	ميزانية الأسرة	have priority over	له الأولوية علي
hard currency	العملة الصعبة	mass destruction	الدمار الشامل
scientific revolution	ثورة علمية	elderly people	كبار السن
enormous damage	أضرار هائلة	withstand drought	يتحمل الجفاف

Read the following carefully

Listening :

Amena: We've been learning that some people are afraid that the light from the sun might go out permanently during an eclipse.

Professor: Really? Well, that couldn't happen, of course. But people are right to think that the sun's very important.

Shahd: Yes that's right. Without heat and light from the sun, there would be no life on Earth, would there?

Professor: Definitely not! Humans have always understood this.

Shahd: So, what exactly is the sun, Professor?

Professor: It's a giant ball of hot gases, which is 150 million kilometres from the Earth.

Amena: Wow! As far as that! Is it true that the temperature of the sun is 15 million degrees centigrade?

Professor: Yes. On condition that you took the temperature at its centre, it would be that hot. The surface of the sun is about 6,000 degrees centigrade.

Shahd: That's incredible.

Professor: The sun gives us heat and light, which we need, but it also gives out x-rays and ultraviolet rays, which can be very harmful to life.

Shahd: Really? Can you explain why they don't usually hurt us, then?

Professor: I'll try and explain. Most of these rays are absorbed in the atmosphere, so they aren't able to affect us. But I ought to warn you about one very important thing.

Shahd: What's that?

Professor: The sun is incredibly strong and you should never look straight at it.

Shahd: Is it OK if you look at the sun wearing sunglasses?

Professor: No, I'm afraid it's not. You won't damage your eyes as long as you don't look at the sun. A friend of mine now has problems with his eyes. He wouldn't have damaged his eyesight if he hadn't looked at the sun. Just remember, never to look at the sun directly. You shouldn't watch an eclipse unless you have a special viewer.

Amena: And of course, the sun can burn your skin. We went to the beach last week and my sister got sunburn.

Professor: That's right, but she would have been fine provided that she had worn sun cream. But I think you can now understand why the sun is so important. Supposing that there wasn't a sun, what would life be like then?

Reading :

Unusual Weather

The word weather usually means the sun, rain, wind or snow. If you live in southern Europe or Africa, you know that temperatures are higher and there is less rain than if you live in northern Europe or Canada. It is unusual for a weather forecast to surprise us.

However, strange weather can occur all over the world. For example, people have seen giant pieces of ice falling from the sky. And what would you think if you saw a ball of light as big as a football on a plane, or floating through your home? Weather experts called these ball lightning.

Some storms are very unusual and may cause terrible damage. The English town of Dunwich was once an important port, but in the fourteenth century, high waves and violent storms hit the area and most of the town disappeared beneath the sea. The worst storm in Britain killed more than 8000 people in 1703. The worst flood in history was in 1887 in China when the Yellow River flooded and killed around a million people.

Unusual weather is becoming more common, with very high or low temperatures and very heavy rainfall all over the world. This causes serious droughts in some places and floods in others. However, this is not a modern phenomenon: in Europe in the eighteenth century, there was a Little Ice Age when rivers like the River Thames in England froze.

What will happen to our weather in the future? Unless we can stop global warming, one day 'unusual' weather may not be unusual any more.

Definitions

absorb	something takes in the liquid, heat, etc., through its surface
directly	with no other person or thing between
eclipse	when the sun or moon seems to disappear, because of the positions of the sun, moon and earth
geyser	a hole in the earth from which hot water can rise
harmful	causing damage
heat	the temperature of something when it is hot
sunburn	when your skin is burned after spending too long in the sun.
beneath	in or to a lower position than something or somebody (under)
drought	a long period of dry weather when there is not enough water

lightning	a bright flash of electrical light in the sky during a storm
northern	in or from the north part of a country or area
occur	to happen, especially without being planned first
rainfall	the amount of rain that falls on an area in a particular period of time
violent	attacking people and trying to hurt or kill them
port	an area or city where ships arrive and leave from
phenomenon	unusual fact or event in nature or society, or not fully understood
ultraviolet rays	light which can make people's skin go darker
degrees centigrade	what you use to measure temperature

Language Notes

sight	البَصَر / مَشْهَد (شئ محدد يمكن رؤيته)
sights	معالم جديرة بالمشاهدة
view	منظر طبيعي ثابت (ما يمكن رؤيته من مكان معين)

Ex: His **sight** was completely restored by the operation.
 A man carrying a donkey is a strange **sight**.
 We went to Rome to see the **sights**.
 There's an excellent **view** from our bedroom window.

reason for + v. + ing / اسم	سبب	cause (v)	يسبب
reason why + جملة	سبب	cause of (n)	سبب

Ex: I don't know **the reason for his absence**. / **why he is absent**.
 What **caused** the fire? What was **the cause of** the fire?

wear + مفعول	يلبس/يكون مرتديا (لوصف عادة أو مظهر الشخص)
put on + مفعول	يقوم بارتداء (لحظة الارتداء أو الأمر بارتداء شئ ما)
dress = get dressed	يلبس (بدون مفعول) / يساعد شخص على ارتداء الملابس
be dressed in = be wearing + مفعول	يكون مرتديا

Ex: When I saw him in the party, he was **wearing** his black suit.
 We **wear** heavy clothes in winter.
 While I was **putting on** my coat, the phone rang.
Put on your shoes, Ali. We're leaving now.
 Women take a long time to **dress (get dressed)**
 Could you **dress** the children for me?

- لاحظ هذه الصفات :-

**High waves / high temperature / serious damage /
heavy rain / strong wind / violent storms.**

يمكن أن نجعل معنى الجملة أقوى باستخدام do / does / did في الاثبات قبل المصدر

Ex: I **do love** pop music. We **do have** a lot of information about the sun.

north / south / east / west تستخدم مع اسم الدولة أو المنطقة كأسم يليه of

northern / southern / eastern / western تستخدم قبل اسم الدولة أو المنطقة مباشرةً

Ex: Alexandria is in the north of Egypt. = Alexandria is in northern Egypt.

westerly / southerly / northerly / easterly

تستخدم هذه الصفات قبل كلمة direction أو wind لتدل علي اتجاه الرياح :

Ex: A westerly wind comes from the west.

They walked in a southerly direction.

go dark	يصبح مظلم	go deaf	يصبح أصم
go blind	يصبح أعمى	go dumb	يصبح أبكم
لاحظ استخدام الصفة بعد الفعل go و معناه هنا become			

any more/longer لم يعد (يأتي الفعل معها فى النفي)

no longer لم يعد (يأتي الفعل معها فى الإثبات)

Ex: He no longer smokes = He doesn't smoke any more / any longer.

Spot the Difference

drought	جفاف	draught	تيار هواء
rainfall	سقوط المطر	waterfall	شلال
occur	يقع / يحدث	occupy	يشغل / يحتل
lightning	البرق	lighting	الانارة / الاضاءة
weather	الطقس	whether	اذا / سواء
sight	حاسة البصر	site	موقع (أثرى / بناء)
protect	يحمى	detect / select	يكشف / يختار
economic	اقتصادى (خاص بالاقتصاد)	economical	موفر / مقتصد
damage	يضر / يتلف	manage	يدير
expert	خبير	export	يصدر
warming	ارتفاع الحرارة	warning	تحذير
sink	يغرق (سفينة أو قارب)	drown	يغرق (انسان أو حيوان)
harbour	مرفأ (لرسو السفن)	port	ميناء (مدينة تصل اليها السفن)

Language Functions

Asking for an explanation طلب تفسير	Giving an explanation تقديم تفسير
Can you explain why...?	Let me explain.
Do you know how...?	I'll try and explain.
I'd like to know how.....	Here's what happens.
Could you tell me how/why...?	What happens is that.....

🐞 **Choose the correct answer:**

- 1- The best thing about our holiday to Iceland was our visit to see the (**geyser – chaser – caesar – gesture**).
- 2- If it rains so hard that the soil can't (**drink – eat – absorb – provide**) water quickly enough, there are floods.
- 3- When there is an (**atmosphere – eclipse – echo – idea**) of the sun, everything goes dark and the birds stop singing.
- 4- You can't see ultraviolet (**rats – rites – rays – razors**), but they are harmful because they can still damage your skin.
- 5- In the desert, temperatures in the summer can be more than 50 (**marks – grades – degrees centigrade – thermometer**).
- 6- The wind is coming (**direct – directly – direction – indirect**) from the south.
- 7- The children got (**sunburns – sunsets – sunrises – sunshines**) after sitting in the sun all afternoon.
- 8- Tourists often find the (**cold – cool – hot – heat**) of summer in Egypt difficult.
- 9- Damietta is an important (**airport – export – import – port**) in the north of Egypt.
- 10- An eclipse of the sun is a strange natural (**phenomenon – sight – response – view**).
- 11- Storms can (**take – bring – cause – occur**) at any time and in any place.
- 12- It has not rained here for five months. It is the longest (**draught – drought – draft – doubt**) anyone can remember.
- 13- There is very little (**sun – eclipse – waterfall – rainfall**) in the south of Egypt, where it is very dry.
- 14- We did not want to see the film because it was about people fighting and being (**violent – lazy – polite – peaceful**).
- 15- What's that on the floor (**across – next – opposite – beneath**) the table?
- 16- When I was a child, I used to be afraid of storms. I covered my eyes so that I could not see the (**fighting – lighting – lightning – sighting**).
- 17- Alexandria is in the (**north – northern – northerly – westerly**) of Egypt.
- 18- Electrical storms are a common (**occasion – accident – occurrence – lightning**) in our part of the country.
- 19- Those trees have grown (**artificially – phenomenally – accidentally – traditionally**) tall in the last two years.
- 20- England and Spain are in (**west – western – westerly – north**) Europe.
- 21- Life on earth depends on heat and light from the (**moon – sun – sky – Saturn**).
- 22- The distance between the sun and the earth is (**50 – 100 – 150 – 200**) million kilometres.
- 23- The temperature at the (**centre – outer – roof – surface**) of the sun is 15 million degrees.

- 24- The sun is made of hot (**gases – rocks – smokes – waters**).
- 25- The atmosphere absorbs most of the sun's (**harmless – harming – harm – harmful**) rays.
- 26- You can't look at the sun safely even if you are wearing (**sunburn – sunglasses – sunshine – sun cream**).
- 27- People are not often surprised by (**whether – weather – feather – brother**) forecasts.
- 28- Dunwich disappeared under the sea after it was hit by a (**violent – serious – fast – high**) storm.
- 29- The worst storm in Britain, which killed more than 8,000 people, took (**part – after – over – place**) in 1703.
- 30- In 1887 in China, around a million people died when the Yellow River (**flooded – erupted – watered – blew**).
- 31- Very high temperatures can cause (**floods – torrents – tornadoes – droughts**).
- 32- In Europe during the eighteenth century, there was a Little Ice Age when rivers (**flooded – froze – boiled – erupted**).
- 33- She does not need to wear glasses. There is nothing wrong with her (**sight – hearing – smell – taste**).
- 34- Very (**tall – huge – high – big**) temperature can make people ill.
- 35- Where we live, the wind usually blows in a (**southerly – south – west – north**) direction.
- 36- Storms can cause (**cruel – serious – strong – high**) damage.
- 37- (**Big – Strong – Heavy – High**) rain and strong winds destroyed buildings all over the country.
- 38- (**An ecstasy - An eclipse - A clips - A collapse**) happens when the light of the sun or moon disappears completely or in part.
- 39- X- Rays and ultraviolet rays are harmful (**at – on – with – to**) life.
- 40- The sun also gives (**out – off – up – in**) X-rays and ultraviolet rays.
- 41- Life (**in – at – over – on**) earth depends on heat and light from the sun.
- 42- Storm (**chasers – purchasers – sellers – buyers**) are people who find and follow storms.
- 43- The tree outside the window blocks (**in – out – down – over**) the sun.
- 44- There's increasing demand for cars which are more (**economical – economic – economy – economist**) on fuel.
- 45- Some people are afraid that the light from the sun might go (**up – down – out – in**) permanently during an eclipse.
- 46- It (**returns – burns – comes – goes**) dark when there's a solar eclipse.
- 47- The wind was (**coughing – blowing – hitting – flashing**) so hard.
- 48- There was a (**clap – flash – dash – hit**) of thunder and then it started to pour with rain.

- 49- Be careful or you'll get (**burn – burning – burnt – born**).
- 50- The whole town (**flowed – drowned – floated – flooded**) when the river burst its banks.
- 51- Many chemicals are (**damage – damaging – damaged – damages**) to the environment.
- 52- I have a real problem (**with – from – by – at**) people who use their mobile phones on the train.
- 53- After days at sea, they finally (**sighted – lighted – looked – fought**) land.
- 54- Thankfully no one was (**destroyed – ruined – harmed – damaged**) in the accident.
- 55- Volcanoes, waves and storms are (**energies – strengths – powers – firms**) of nature.
- 56- Is it OK if you look at the sun (**putting – dressing – putting on – wearing**) sunglasses?
- 57- (**Extreme – Extremely – Extra – Fine**) weather conditions have a bad effect on the environment.
- 58- The sun is (**credible – credibly – incredible – incredibly**) strong.
- 59- (**Light – Lightning – Lighter – Lighting**) is the light you see during an electrical storm.
- 60- Cotton is considered an (**absorbent – absorb – absorption – absorbingly**) material .
- 61- Egypt is the land of (**safe – safety – safely – unsafe**) and security .
- 62- Don't worry about it. It causes no (**hurt – harmful – harm – harmful**).
- 63- Iceland is famous for its (**conic – volcanic – atmospheric – climatic**) mountains.
- 64- Ships can't sail in certain (**atmospheric – sphere – hemisphere – space**) conditions.
- 65- Electrical storms are a common (**theory – clear – occurrence – occur**) in our part of the country.
- 66- (**Northern – Southern – Western – Eastern**) means in or from the north part of a country or area
- 67- A (**geyser – pond – lake – ocean**) is a hole in the earth from which hot water can rise.
- 68- The earthquake (**made – caused – prevented – avoided**) millions of people to abandon their homes.
- 69- The ultraviolet rays cause the skin to (**bring – come – go – lose**) darker.
- 70- I (**put on – wear - dress – put off**) the kids every day before I go to work.
- 71- Droughts and rainfall are not modern (**phenomena – phenomenon – phenomenally – photo**).
- 72- The (**most windy – windy – windiest – more windy**) place in the world is Port Martin in Antarctica.

- 73- The wind was so strong that it lifted people (**on – of – off – down**) their feet.
- 74- A thunder storm is one of the most impressive (**cities – sites – sights – cries**) in nature.
- 75- It should be snowing now according to the (**climate – weather – air – atmosphere**) forecast.
- 76- A violent storm (**fit – hit – met – set**) the area and destroyed some houses.
- 77- There has been below average (**rainbow – raincoat – rainforest – rainfall**) this month.
- 78- The sea flooded and killed (**round – above – around – beneath**) 2000 people.
- 79- Unusual weather becomes more common with very (**high – wide – strong – big**) or low temperatures.
- 80- The worst flood in (**geography – history – chemistry – biology**) occurred in China in 1887.

Alternatives to using “ If ”

- يمكن أن نستخدم (When) بدلا من (If) في الحالة الصفرية :

- **If / When** I feel tired, I go to bed early.
- **When** it is warm, I go for a walk every day.
- Where do you go **if / when** you are on holiday?

- الروابط الآتية تستخدم بدلا من (If) حالة اولى وتانية (خاصة بصورة رسمية) :

(**Provided that / On condition that / Providing / As long as / So long as**)

- You can borrow my pen **on condition that** you give it back.
- **Provided that** you send the order by fax, we will deliver the goods immediately.
- They'd be in London now **provided that** they caught the midday plane.

- تستخدم (in case) بمعنى (تحسبا لـ) بدلا من (if) في الحالة الاولى لتعبر عما ينبغي فعله استعدادا لموقف محتمل في المستقبل وتستخدم في الحالة الثانية بمعنى If :

- I'll draw a map for you **in case** you can't find our house.
- I don't want to go out tonight **in case** my friend phones.
- Shall I keep some chicken for you **in case** you're hungry when you come back?
- **In case** I forget later, here are the keys to the garage.

لاحظ الفرق في المعنى بين (If) و (In case) في الأمثلة التالية :

- Let's take our swimsuits **in case** there's a pool at the hotel. (We don't know if there is a pool there.)
- Let's take our swimsuits **if** there's a pool in the hotel. (We will wait until we know about the pool before we decide.)

- يمكن استخدام (Suppose / Supposing (that) / Imagine (that)) بدلا من (If) في الحالة الثانية (خاصة بصورة غير رسمية) :

- **Suppose / Supposing / Imagine** you found a job in Cairo, what would you do?

- يمكن استخدام (Unless) بمعنى (إذا لم / لو لم) بدلا من (If) في كل الحالات ويأتي بعدها جملة مثبتة معناها منفي :
جملة مثبتة معناها منفي :

- If I hadn't played badly, I would have won.
- Unless I had played badly, I would have won.
- If it doesn't rain, we will go to the beach party.
- Unless it rains, we will go to the beach party.

- تستخدم (should) بدلا من (If) في الحالة الاولى والثانية ويأتي بعدها فاعل ثم مصدر :

- If he has enough time, he will watch the football match.
- Should he have enough time, he will watch the football match.
- If it snowed tomorrow, we would go skiing.
- Should it snow tomorrow, we would go skiing.

- يمكن استخدام (Were) بدلا من (If) في الحالة الثانية ويأتي بعد الفاعل مكملات توضح المعنى أو فعل مصدر مسبق بـ to :
المعنى أو فعل مصدر مسبق بـ to :

- Were he to come tomorrow, we could borrow his car.
- Were I a millionaire, I would buy a castle.

- يمكن استخدام (Had) بدلا من (If) في الحالة الثانية ويأتي بعد الفاعل مكملات تفيد الملكية :

- Had they a car, they would go with us to Alexandria.

- يمكن استخدام (Had) بدلا من (If) في الحالة الثالثة ويأتي بعد الفاعل تصريف ثالث :

- If you had invited me, I might have come.
- Had you invited me, I might have come.
- If he had been careful, He wouldn't have had that terrible accident
- Had he been careful, He wouldn't have had that terrible accident.

- يمكن أن نستخدم (and / or / or else / otherwise) بدلا من (If) في الحالة الأولى :

- You've to start studying, or else you'll fail all those exams.
- We'd better send it by express mail, otherwise it'll take days.

- يمكن استخدام (In case of / with / by + v-ing / noun.) بدلا من (If) في الجمل المثبتة :

- If you planned things properly, you wouldn't get into a mess.
- In case of planning things properly, you wouldn't get into a mess.

- يمكن استخدام (Without / But for + v-ing / noun.) بدلا من (If) في الجمل المنفية :

- If we don't have a car, we will be late for the show.
- But for having a car / our car, we will be late for the show.
- Unless you had suggested it, I wouldn't have phoned him.
- Without suggesting it / your suggestion, I wouldn't have phoned him.

- لاحظ أن (without) تساوى :

- في الحالة الثانية : If it weren't for - في الحالة الثالثة : If it hadn't been for ...

- If you didn't wear a warm jacket, you would feel cold.
- If it weren't for wearing a warm jacket, you would feel cold.
- If I hadn't missed the bus, I wouldn't have been late for the test.
- If it hadn't been for missing the bus, I wouldn't have been late for the test.

Choose the correct Answer :

- 1- As long (**so – that – as – if**) you don't look directly at the sun, you won't damage your eyes.
- 2- On condition that you (**wears – wear – wore – worn**) warm clothes, you won't get cold in the desert tonight.
- 3- (**Provided – Provides – Provide – Proved**) that you use the telescope correctly, you will see some planets.
- 4- They (**would – could – won't – will**) get sunburnt if they sit in the sun all day.
- 5- Open the door (**in case – in case of – if – the case of**) an emergency.
- 6- Supposing that you went to China, how (**will – do – would – can**) you communicate?
- 7- The teacher said that they could go on the boat to the island (**as well as – but for – in case of - on condition that**) they did what the captain told them.
- 8- The team should win the match (**provided that – unless – by – on condition of**) they have all their best players.
- 9- We can study in the library as long as we (**didn't – don't – won't – wouldn't**) make any noise.
- 10- Tarek would not have caught that bus (**unless – without – if – providing**) he had run very fast.
- 11- Mona would not have passed the exam (**unless – without – if – in case of**) revising all week.
- 12- Imagine that you lived by the sea, (**will – did – do – would**) you go swimming every day?
- 13- We could visit the museum now, (**without – in case of – unless – as long as**) it's already open.
- 14- I'll swim in the sea today (**without – in case of – unless – as long as**) it's windy at the beach.
- 15- You won't feel tired tomorrow (**on condition – in case – unless – as long**) that you go to bed early tonight.
- 16- I won't know what the book is about (**without – in case of – unless – as long as**) reading it.
- 17- I'll play tennis with you (**on condition – in case – unless – as long**) as I can borrow a tennis racket.
- 18- (**Unless - As long as – As good as – Except if**) it's not too hot tomorrow, we can play tennis in the park.
- 19- You can borrow my phone (**on – in – by – with**) condition that you don't lose it.
- 20- (**Unless – As long as – As good as – if**) those tourists can speak Arabic, we will need to speak to them in English.
- 21- Leila has been ill, but provided that she's feeling better tomorrow, she (**would – won't – will – could**) be back at school.

- 22- (**In case of – Unless – If – Without**) looking where he was going, the man walked into a tree.
- 23- (**Supposed – Supposing – Supposes – Support**) we started a book club after school, who would want to join it?
- 24- (**Unless – If – In case of – But for**) going to England, I would have met my pen friend.
- 25- (**If – Unless – In case of – Were**) the sun to disappear, there would be no life on Earth.
- 26- You will win (**as long as – unless – without – in case of**) you train hard.
- 27- (**Would it be – Could it be – Is it – Was it**) OK if you look at the sun wearing sunglasses?
- 28- Hadn't he looked at the sun, he (**won't – will – wouldn't – would**) have damaged his sight.
- 29- If it hadn't rained so heavily, we (**would have – have – have had – wouldn't have had**) floods.
- 30- Should it (**is – were – had been – be**) very hot tomorrow, we will not go to the beach.
- 31- Should I (**be asked – were asked – have asked – had been asked**), I would go to the moon.
- 32- Were I you, I (**shall – would – can – may**) listen to the weather forecast before going out.
- 33- (**Unless – Provided – Without – But**) the storm reached the city, houses would be destroyed.
- 34- What would happen if a storm (**hits – was hit – is hit – hit**) the coasts of Egypt?
- 35- (**Were – Had – If – Providing**) there clouds, you would not be able to see the moon.
- 36- Had it been an eclipse, the sky (**would have gone – will go – might go – should go**) dark.
- 37- (**Provided – Had – should – Were**) I to discover a planet, I would give it my aunt's name.
- 38- (**Were – If – In case of – Should**) he watch the sky , he can see stars and planets.
- 39- You should wear a hat, (**otherwise – unless – in case – if**) your face will get burnt.
- 40- It is better for your eyes (**without – in case of – were – on condition that**) you wear glasses.
- 41- (**If – Unless – Should – Had**) you not spent so long in the sun, you wouldn't have got burnt.
- 42- Provided it's warm and sunny tomorrow, I (**go – won't go – 'd have gone – 'll go**) swimming.

- 43- What would happen (**or – else – otherwise – in case**) the volcano erupted?
- 44- Don't smoke (**or – unless – without – but for**) you will develop cancer.
- 45- (**But for – Unless – with – In case of**) your hard work, you would have failed.
- 46- (**Condition – As long – Imagine – Supposed**) that you lived by the sea, what would you do every day?
- 47- Should you (**walk – walking – walked – had walked**) all the way, it would take about 3 hours.
- 48- I'll go to the beach as long as it (**is – had been – is being – were**) summer.
- 49- (**If – Else – Had – Were**) I in your shoes, I'd listen to the weather forecast before going out.
- 50- Unless I (**don't go – had gone – didn't go – hasn't gone**) to that school, I wouldn't have met you.
- 51- Had he (**is – were – been – was**) taller, he would have been a basketball player.
- 52- (**Providing – Without – But for – In case of**) having a degree, I could get a job easily.
- 53- She must be on time (**or – but – if – unless**) we are going without her.
- 54- (**Without – Unless – with – In case of**) Amr, I wouldn't have finished in time.
- 55- (**Were – Should – Had – Unless**) he some free time, he would visit you.

Exercises on Unit 18

2) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

There are some amazing trees in the world. Some people think that a tree in Britain might be 4,000 years old. In Italy, a tree that might be the same age is famous for its size: its diameter is more than 18 metres. It is called The Tree of 100 Horses because it is believed that 100 soldiers on horses waited under the tree in a storm. However, no scientists have been able to prove the ages of these two trees. The oldest tree that scientists know the age of in Europe is more than 1,000 years old. The tree, which is in Greece, first grew in 941 CE. However, if you compared **these** with two trees in North America, they would seem quite young! Scientists used to think a tree called "Methuselah" was the world's oldest tree. It is more than 4,800 years old. Then scientists found a nearby tree that is more than 5,000 years old! The location of these trees is a secret, and for a good reason: in 2012, a woman was arrested for burning down another tree which was 3,500 years old.

These are probably the world's oldest individual trees, but scientists believe that there are even older roots of trees. Sometimes individual trees might have died, but new trees have grown from their roots. For example, a small tree in Sweden has grown from roots which are believed to be nearly 10,000 years old. We know the age of most of these trees because scientists have calculated their

age after extracting a piece of wood from the trunks. However, we also know that a tree in Asia is more than 2,300 years old because a text describes when it was planted. I wish I could see some of these trees: they are incredible.

A) Choose the correct Answer :

1- Where are the two oldest individual trees in the world?

- a) Greece b) Britain c) Sweden d) North America

2- Why was a woman arrested in 2012?

- a) She found one of the old trees. b) She told people where the old trees were.
c) She destroyed an old tree. d) She burned all the old trees.

3- Why do people believe that 100 soldiers on horses waited under the Italian tree?

- a) It is a very tall tree. b) Its branches are very wide.
c) It took 100 horses to pull the tree down. d) It looks like a lot of horses.

4- What does the writer think about trees?

- a) He wishes he could see more of them. b) He is impressed by them.
c) They should be studied more. d) All of the above.

5- What does the underlined word these refer to?

- a) the world's oldest trees b) the oldest trees in Europe
c) soldiers d) soldiers on horses

6- What do you think the word trunk means?

- a) the main part of a tree b) the bark c) a leaf d) a tree's rings

B) Answer the following questions :

7- How do scientists calculate the age of trees?

8- When did the 1000 year-old tree in Greece first grow?

9- What makes the tree in Sweden different from the other trees in the text?

10- Do you think that we will find even older trees in the future? Why / Why not?

4) Finish the following dialogue :

Student : I'd like to know about floods, please. ?

Teacher: Well, If a lot of rain falls, the soil can't absorb it so

Student : Can you explain why cities sometimes flood?

Teacher: When the water reaches a river in or near
the city, it becomes too full. The water then

Student : Oh! And ?

Teacher: Governments can warn people or evacuate them.

Student : I think I understand now.

6) A- Translate into Arabic:

1- I wish I had had time to read more novels when I was younger.

2- Your skin might burn if you sit in the sun without using sun cream.

B- Translate ONE (1) sentence only into English:

1- كانت الرياح بالقطع شديدة خلال الليل، اليس كذلك؟

2- يقاس تقدم الأمم بمدى اهتمامها بقضايا البيئة علي مختلف أنواعها.

Chapter: 5

Part 1

Students Book Text

1. I was not sorry to say goodbye to my brother and his soldier friends, although I was sad to say goodbye to the Princess. Should I tell her the truth? Was I wrong to pretend to be the King? I did not know. "Rudolf, be careful, won't you?" the Princess said. "Be careful of what?" I asked. "I can't say. But think what your life means to the people of Ruritania," she said. I remembered what Rose had said about my brother Robert back in England: "He realises his position in society brings with it responsibilities." I had always wanted to have a quiet life, but I suddenly realised how many responsibilities I now had here in Ruritania. How on earth had I got myself into such a situation?

1. لم أكن أسفياً أن أقول وداعاً لأخي وأصدقائه الجنود، على الرغم من أنني كنت حزينا أن أقول وداعاً للأميرة. وهل يجب أن أقول لها الحقيقة؟ وهل كنت مخطئاً أن أظهار بأنني أنا الملك؟ لم أكن أعرف. قالت الأميرة: "كن حذراً يا رودولف، أليس كذلك؟". فسألتها: "أكن حذراً من ماذا؟" فردت قائلة: "لا يمكنني أن أقول لك، ولكن فكر كم تعنى حياتك بالنسبة لشعب روريتانيا". تذكرت ما قالته روز عن أخي روبرت عند عودته لإنجلترا: "إنه يدرك أن مركزه في المجتمع يجلب معه مسؤوليات". كنت قد أردت دائماً أن أعيش حياة هادئة، ولكنني أدركت فجأة قدر المسؤوليات التي على عاتقي الآن و أنا هنا في روريتانيا. يا الهي ! كيف وضعت نفسي في مثل هذا الموقف ؟

2. Over the next few weeks, I am pleased to say that no one seemed to notice I was not the real King of Ruritania. Because I looked so like the King, it was much easier for me to pretend to be him than to pretend to me by neighbour at home, for example. I learnt a lot about how a country is run, but I made mistakes, sometimes big ones. I became very good at pretending I had forgotten rules or people that I had met, and I hoped my growing popularity with the people of Ruritania would help them to forgive my occasional bad decisions.

2. خلال الأسابيع القليلة التالية، يسرني أن أقول أنه لا أحد يبدو عليه أنه يلاحظ أنني لست الملك الحقيقي لروريتانيا. لأنني كنت كثير الشبه جدا بالملك، فعلى سبيل المثال كان من السهل جداً لي أن أدعي أنني الملك أكثر من ادعائي امام جاري في المنزل بأنني أنا ، تعلمت الكثير عن كيفية إدارة بلد ما، لكنني ارتكبت أخطاء، وأحياناً أخطاء كبيرة و أصبحت متقناً جداً في التظاهر و كنت قد نسيت القوانين و الناس الذين قد قابلتهم من قبل ، وكان عندي أمل في أن شعبيتي المتزايدة بين شعب روريتانيا ستجعلهم يسامحونني على قراراتي السيئة التي كنت قد اتخذتها في بعض الأحيان.

3. One day, Sapt came into my room. "Here's a letter for you," he said. "From the writing, I think it's from a woman. I also have some important news." "What is it?" I asked. "We now know that the King's at the Castle of Zenda," he said. "How do you know this?" "We asked where the rest of the Six Men were, and found out that they are all there at the castle: Lauengram, Krafstein and young Rupert

Hentzau, the three biggest criminals in Ruritania. "Do you think the King's definitely there?" I asked. Almost certainly. The three men are always at the castle, and people say the drawbridge is nearly always kept up. That is not normal. No one goes into the building without the permission of Rupert or Michael. "Then I must go to Zenda," I said. That wouldn't be a good idea. "If not today, then soon. I must go there." You'll probably stay there forever if you do, said Sapt.

3. في أحد الأيام دخل سابت حجرتي و قال لي : "هذا خطاب لك , ومن كتابة الخطاب أعتقد أنه مرسل من امرأة , و عندي أيضا بعض الأخبار الهامة " فسألته: "ما هي؟" فقال: "نحن الآن نعرف أن الملك في قلعة زندا" فقلت له: " كيف عرفت هذا؟" فقال: "نحن سألنا عن مكان باقي الستة رجال , واكتشفنا أنهم كلهم هناك في القلعة , وكان منهم : لوينجرام و كرافستين و روبرت هنتزو الشاب و هؤلاء الثلاثة هم أكبر مجرمين في روريتانيا." فقلت له: " هل تعتقد أن الملك فعلا هناك؟" فقال: "يكاد يكون من المؤكد ذلك. الرجال الثلاثة هم دائما في القلعة، ويقول الناس أن هناك جسر متحرك يحتفظون به بصفة شبه دائمة , وهذا شيء غير عادي. ولا أحد يذهب إلى المبنى بدون الحصول على إذن من روبرت أو مايكل." فقلت: "إذاً يجب أن أذهب إلى زندا". "هذه لن تكون فكرة جيدة." "إذا لم يكن اليوم، ففي وقت قريب لابد من الذهاب إلى هناك." فقال سابت: "من المحتمل أن تبقى هناك إلى الأبد إذا قمت بذلك."

4. I was silent and I could see that Sapt was studying my face. What's worrying you, Rassendyll? he asked. Tell me, Sapt, why is it that wherever I go in the capital, I'm followed by six people? "Because I've ordered them to follow you." "But why?" "It would be very useful for Michael if you disappeared. And if you disappear, the game's over." "I don't need such help," I protested. "I can look after myself." De Gautet, Bersonin and Detchard are in Strelsau, and anyone of them could catch you easily, he said, as if I were a child.

4. كنت صامتا، وكنت أرى أن سابت يدرس وجهي. سألني: "ما الذي يقلقك يا راسندل؟". فقلت له: "أخبرني يا سابت، لماذا عندما أذهب إلى العاصمة يقوم ستة أشخاص بمتابعتي؟" فقال "لأنني أمرتهم أن يتابعوك." فقلت: "ولكن لماذا؟" فقال: "سيكون من المفيد جدا لمايكل إذا أنت اختفيت. وإذا أنت اختفيت ستنتهي اللعبة." و اعترضت على هذا قائلا: "أنا لست بحاجة إلى مثل هذه المساعدة، فأنا أستطيع الاعتناء بنفسني." فقال لي , كما لو أنني طفل صغير , "ان دي جوتيت، وبيرسونن و ديتشارد في سترلسو، وكل واحد منهم يمكنه القبض عليك بسهولة"

5. So, what's that letter? said Sapt, pointing at the one he had given me. I opened it and read it aloud: (*If the King wants to know something important, please do what I ask. At the end of New Avenue, there is a house in a large garden. There is a wall around the garden with a gate at the back. At midnight tonight, go through the gate where you will see a statue of a horse, turn right and walk twenty metres. There you will find six steps up to a summer house. Go into this summer house and someone will tell you something very important about your life. But you must be alone. If you do not come, your life will be in danger. I am a loyal friend to you. Do not show this letter to anyone, or it will put a woman in great danger: Michael will punish me.*) Yes, and Michael can also write a very good letter, said Sapt. I thought the same: surely Michael had written this letter to trap me.

5. و قال سابت و هو يشير إلى الخطاب الذي أعطاني آياه: "إذاً، ما الذي تحويه تلك الرسالة؟" ففتحت الرسالة وأخذت في قراءتها بصوت عال: (إذا كان الملك يريد أن يعرف شيئاً مهماً، فمن فضلك افعل ما أطلبه. يوجد في نهاية الشارع الجديد يوجد منزل في حديقة كبيرة. وهناك سور حول الحديقة به بوابة في الخلف. في منتصف هذه الليلة ادخل من البوابة إلى المكان الذي ستري فيه تمثال لحصان، اتجه يميناً وامشي عشرين متراً. وهناك سوف تجد ست درجات سلم إلى منزل صيفي. ادخل في هذا البيت الصيفي و سوف تجد شخص سوف يقول لك شيئاً مهم جداً عن حياتك. ولكن يجب أن تكون بمفردك. و إذا لم تأتي سوف تكون حياتك في خطر. أنا صديقاً وفيّاً لك. لا تظهر هذه الرسالة إلى أي شخص، و الا سوف تكون هناك امرأة في خطر كبير: مايكل سيعاقبني. " فقال العقيد سابت. "نعم، ويمكن أن يكتب مايكل أيضاً رسالة جيدة جداً"، واعتقدت أنا نفس الشيء : بالتأكيد قد كتب مايكل هذه الرسالة لكي يوقع بي .

6. I was about to throw the letter in the bin, when I saw that there was more writing on the other side. (*If you do not believe me, ask Colonel Sapt.*) "What?" said the Colonel, so I read on. (*Ask him what woman has been a guest of the Duke. Ask if her name begins with A.*) "It must be Antoinette de Mauban," I cried. "How do you know?" asked Sapt, and I told him all I knew about the woman. "I've heard that she came to Ruritania with her servants as a guest of Michael," Sapt said. "People say she had a great argument with Michael, and now she's staying somewhere in Strelsau." "So she could be useful to us," I suggested. "Perhaps she would be useful if she had information about Michael. However, I believe that Michael wrote that letter," said Sapt. "So do I, but I'm not certain," I said. "I'll go to the house tonight." "No, you mustn't," said Sapt. "Let me go instead." "You can come too, but you must wait outside the gate when I go in alone." "I don't believe this woman and you're mad to go!" said Sapt. "I believe this woman, and I will go," I said. "Either I go to the house, or I go back to England. We don't have much time. Every day we leave the King imprisoned there's more danger. We must move quickly," I said. Sapt was beginning to know when he could tell me what to do and when he could not. So **reluctantly** he agreed with me.

6. وكنت على وشك أن ألقى الرسالة في سلة المهملات، إلا انني رأيت أن هناك كتابة أكثر مكتوبة على الجانب الآخر. و هذه الكتابة هي : (إذا كنت لا تصدقني، فأسأل العقيد سابت.) فقال العقيد: "ماذا؟"، لذلك أكملت القراءة : (أسأله عما إذا كانت المرأة ضيفة للدوق. أسأله عما إذا كان اسمها يبدأ بحرف الـ A.) فصحت قائلاً: "من المؤكد أن تكون هذه المرأة هي أنطوانيت دي موبان". فسأل سابت: "كيف عرفت ذلك؟" فقلت له كل ما عرفته عن المرأة. و قال سابت: "لقد سمعت أنها جاءت لروريتانيا مع خدمها و نزلت ضيفة عند مايكل"، ويقول الناس أنها كانت في جدال كبير مع مايكل، والآن هي تقيم في مكان ما في سترلسو". فاقترحت قائلاً: "إذاً يمكن أن تكون مفيدة بالنسبة لنا". فرد علي العقيد سابت: "ربما تكون مفيدة إذا كان لديها معلومات حول مايكل، و مع ذلك فأنا أعتقد أن مايكل هو الذي كتب تلك الرسالة". فقلت له: "و أنا أيضاً أعتقد ذلك، ولكنني لست متأكداً، وسأذهب إلى المنزل هذه الليلة". فحذرنى سابت قائلاً: "لا، لا يجب ان تفعل ذلك أبداً، دعني أنا أذهب بدلاً منك". فقلت: "يمكنك أن تأتي أيضاً، ولكن يجب عليك أن تنتظر خارج البوابة بينما أذهب أنا إلى داخل المنزل بمفردتي". فقال لي سابت: "أنا لا اصدق هذه المرأة وأنت مجنون إن قررت الذهاب!". فقلت له: "أنا اصدق هذه المرأة، وسوف أذهب" وأضفت قائلاً: "إما أن أذهب إلى المنزل، أو أعود إلى إنجلترا، ونحن

ليس لدينا الكثير من الوقت. فكل يوم نترك الملك سجيناً فان هناك المزيد من الخطر، لذا يجب علينا التحرك وبسرعة،". وبدأ العقيد سابت يدرك متى يمكنه أن يقول لي ما يجب القيام به ومتى لا يمكنه ذلك. لذا وافق **على مضض**.

7. At half past eleven that night, we got on our horses and soon arrived outside the gate to the house, carrying our guns. It was a very dark night. "I'll wait for you here, outside the gate," said Sapt. "Good luck." I opened the gate and I found myself in a leafy garden. I saw the statue of the horse and walked across the garden with the gun in my hand. I followed the directions given in the letter and, although it was dark, I soon arrived at the summer house. When I went inside, I heard a woman's voice. "Shut the door," the woman whispered. I did as she asked and then looked around the room, which was lit by a small candle. It was almost empty except for a small **iron** table and two chairs. In the soft light, I could just see Antoinette in front of me and her servant behind.

7. وفي تمام الساعة الحادية عشرة والنصف من تلك الليلة، ركبنا خيولنا وسرعان ما وصلنا خارج بوابة المنزل، نحمل سلاحنا. وكانت ليلة مظلمة جداً. فقال لي العقيد سابت: " سأنتظر هنا، خارج البوابة، حظاً سعيداً". فتحت البوابة ووجدت نفسي في حديقة مورقة. ورأيت تمثال حصان ومشيت عبر الحديقة ومسدسي في يدي. تابعت التعليمات والإرشادات التي كانت بالرسالة، على الرغم من شدة الظلام، وسرعان ما وصلت إلى المكان المراد. وعندما دخلت سمعت صوت امرأة يهمس قائلاً: "أغلق الباب". فعلت ما طلبت مني ونظرت في أرجاء الغرفة، التي كانت مضاءة بواسطة شمعة صغيرة. كانت الغرفة شبه خالية باستثناء طاولة حديدية صغيرة وكرسيين. وخلال هذا الضوء الخافت رأيت انطونيت ومن ورائها خادمتها.

8. "We have little time," Antoinette said. "Listen! I know who you are and I know you're not the King. You're Mr Rassendyll. I wrote that letter to you at the Duke's orders. In twenty minutes, three men will be here to kill you." "Or I'll kill them! I suppose they're three of the Duke's Six Men?" "Yes, you must leave here before they arrive, so listen carefully! The plan is to kill you and to take your body into the old town. It'll be found and Michael will arrest Colonel Sapt and Captain Fritz von Tarlenheim for murdering you. Then a messenger will be sent to Zenda and the real King will be murdered too. The Duke will then become King. Do you understand?" "Oh, yes, I understand. It's a clever plan. But why are you helping me?" "I don't like to see people being killed. Now go. But remember, you're never safe in this city. You have guards following you, don't you? Well, Michael's men are following them. If you're alone, then you'll die. Now go quietly this way past the summer house for about a hundred metres. There you'll find a ladder against the wall. Climb it and run as fast as you can."

8. فقالت لي: "لدينا القليل من الوقت"، وأضافت قائلة: "اسمع! أعرف من أنت وأنا أعلم أنك لست الملك. أنت السيد راسندل. كتبت لك تلك الرسالة لأنه بأمر من الدوق في غضون عشرين دقيقة سيكون هنا ثلاثة رجال لقتلك". فقالت لها: "أو أقتلهم أنا! أظن أنهم ثلاثة من الرجال الستة خاصة الدوق؟" فقالت لي: "نعم، ويجب أن تغادر هذا المكان قبل وصولهم، لذا عليك الاستماع بعناية! فالخطة هي قتلك، وإلقاء جثمانك في البلدة القديمة. بعد ذلك يتم العثور على جثتك ومن ثم يعتقل مايكل كلا من سابت وفريترز ويتهممهم بقتلك. ثم يتم إرسال رسول إلى زندا و يقتل الملك

الحقيقي أيضا. حينئذ سوف يصبح الدوق هو الملك. هل فهمت؟ " فقلت لها: " نعم، أفهم. أنها خطة ذكية، ولكن لماذا تساعدني؟" فقالت لي: "أنا لا أحب أن أرى الناس يقتلون" وأضافت "أذهب الآن. ولكن تذكر، انك لن تكون أبدا آمنة في هذه المدينة. لديك حرس يتبعك، أليس كذلك؟ حسنا، رجال مايكل يراقبونهم ، وينتظرون اللحظة التي تكون فيها بمفردك ليقتلوك . الآن اذهب بهدوء من هذا الطريق المجاور للمنزل لحوالي مائة متر، وهناك ستجد سلم على الجدار. تسلقه ثم اركض بأسرع ما يمكن"

9. "And what will you do?" "I also have a game to play. I'll tell the Duke's men that you never came. If the Duke doesn't find out what I've done, we may meet again."
"Thank you. You've helped the King tonight," I said. "But before I go, tell me something: Do you know where he is in the castle?" "Yes, I do know. Inside the castle there's a door on the right, and behind that – but listen! They're here! It's too late for you to escape!" I looked through a gap in the summer house door and saw three men standing outside. Then I heard a voice, which spoke in English: "Are you in there, Mr Rassendyll?" I did not answer. "We want to make you an offer," the voice said. "Will you let us in?" "Do not trust them," said Antoinette quietly.

9. فقلت لها: "وماذا ستفعلين؟" فقالت لي: "لدي حيلة. سأقول لرجال الدوق انك لم تأتي إلى هنا، وإذا لم يكتشف الدوق ما قمت به، قد أراك مرة أخرى." فقلت لها: "شكرا لك. لقد ساعدتني الملك هذه الليلة." وأضافت: "لكن قبل أن أذهب، قولي لي شيئا: هل تعرفين أين مكان الملك في القلعة؟" فقالت لي: "نعم أعرف، داخل القلعة هناك باب على اليمين، ووراء ذلك ... ولكن اسمع إنهم هنا فات الأوان بالنسبة لك لتهرب!" نظرت من خلال فجوة في باب البيت ورأيت ثلاثة رجال يقفون في الخارج. ثم سمعت صوتا، يتكلم بالانجليزية: "هل أنت هناك، يا سيد راسندل؟" لم أرد عليهم. فقال الصوت: "نحن نريد أن نقدم لك عرضا. هل تأذن لنا بالدخول؟" فقالت لي انطونيت بهدوء: "لا تثق بهم".

Answer The Following Questions

A) Choose the correct answer :

1- How did Rassendyll feel on leaving the princess's palace?

- a- He wasn't sorry to say goodbye to Michael and his solidier friends.
- b- He was sad to say goodbye to the princess.
- c- He was happy to escape Michael's men's anger.
- d- Both a and b are correct.

2- What did Rassendyll wish he had told the princess about?

- a- He wished to tell her that he wasn't the real king.
- b- He wished he had asked her to marry her.
- c- He wished she had asked her to become a queen.
- d- He wished to tell her that he would leave the country.

3- What did the princess ask Rassendyll to be careful about?

- a- His life
- b- Leaving Ruritania
- c- The money she had given him
- d- What to say and do

4- Why did she ask him to be careful about his life?

- a- She needed him a lot
- b- He knew the secret of the real king
- c- As his life meant a lot for his people
- d- As Michael would need his help

5- When Flavia warned Rassendyll, what did he remember about Rose?

- a- Rose's words about his brother's responsibilities.
- b- Rose's warning not to go to Ruritania
- c- Rose's advice to be careful about his visit to Ruritania
- d- Rose's demand to be careful about his money

6- Why did Rassendyll remember what Rose'd said about responsibilities?

- a- Robert realized his position in society brought with it responsibilities.
- b- Because he had now many responsibilities in Ruritania.
- c- Because he met Flavia who had a lot of responsibilities.
- d- He hated responsibilities all his life.

7- Pretending to be king of Ruritania benefited Rassendyll a lot. Why?

- a- He learnt a lot about how a country was run.
- b- He loved the Princess.
- c- He became very good at eating good food.
- d- He liked his stay in Ruritania

8- How did Rassendyll manage to cover up his big mistakes?

- a- He pretended he had forgotten rules and people.
- b- His wealth helped the people to forgive his mistakes.
- c- Sapt and Fritz helped him a lot.
- d- The army helped him.

9- How did Rassendyll benefited from his growing popularity?

- a- He could defeat Michael.
- b- He could defeat the marshal.
- c- The people of Ruritania forgave his occasional bad decisions.
- d- He could save the real king.

10- Sapt had some important news of the king. What was it?

- a- He became sure that the king was at the castle of Zenda.
- b- The marshal could save the king.
- c- The king was in the palace.
- d- The real king was so happy in his prison.

11- What made Sapt sure that the king was locked in the castle of zenda?

- a- Because Lauengram, Krafstein and Rupert Hentzau were always at the castle.
- b- The drawbridge was nearly always kept out, which wasn't normal.
- c- No one went into the castle without the permission of Robert or Michael.
- d- a, b and c are correct.

12- Why did Sapt refuse that Rassendyll goes to Zenda to save the king?

- a- Because Sapt would save the king.
- b- Because they had no time.
- c- Because Fritz could save the king alone.
- d- Because Rassendyll would stay there for life if he did.

13- Why was Rassendyll followed by 6 men wherever he went in the capital?

- a- Because Sapt ordered those men to follow him.
- b- Because Michael ordered them to follow him.
- c- Because flavia asked them to follow Rassendyll.
- d- Both a and c are correct.

14- What made Sapt appoint six men to follow Rassendyll?

- a- It would be very useful for Michael if Rassendyll disappeared .
- b- If Rassendyll disappeared, the game would be over.
- c- De Gautet, Bersonin or Detchard could catch Rassendyll easily.
- d- a, b and c are correct.

15- Why was Rassendyll angry about being followed by six men?

- a- They gave him headache
- b- They disrupt his plans
- c- He didn't need them. He could look after himself.
- d- Sapt didn't like that.

16- Who sent a letter to Rassendyll (the king)?

- a- Antoinette de Mauban.
- b- Rose
- c- Flavia
- d- The marshal

17- What did Antoinette ask Rassendyll to do in her first letter?

- a- To leave the country rapidly
- b- To go to Zenda to save the king.
- c- To come alone to the summer house to tell him an important thing about his life.
- d- To be careful with the throne.

18- What would happen if the pretend king didn't go to the summer house?

- a- Antoinette's life would be in danger.
- b- His life would be in danger.
- c- Flavia's life would be in danger.
- d- Michael's life would be in danger.

19- In her first letter, what did Antoinette warn Rassendyll not to do?

- a- Not to show that to anyone.
- b- Not to come alone.
- c- Not travel abroad again.
- d- Not to leave the palace.

20- Why shouldn't Rassendyll have shown Antoinette's letter to anyone?

- a- Flavia would punish Antoinette.
- b- The real king would be killed.
- c- It would put a woman in a great danger and Michael would punish her.
- d- Antoinette's servant's would be killed.

21- Sapt and Rassendyll made the same guessing about the writer of the letter Explain.

- a- Sapt thought it was Michael himself who wrote the letter.
- b- Rassendyll thought that Michael had written that letter to trap him.
- c- They both thought that Flavia wrote it.
- d- Both a and b are correct.

22- What did Antoinette write on the other side of the letter?

- a- Not to show this letter to any one.
- b- To ask Sapt if he didn't believe her.
- c- To show the letter to the king.
- d- To show the letter to Flavia.

23- Why did Rassendyll deduce that Antoinette was the writer of the letter?

- a- She said she had been a guest of Sapt and her name began with A.
- b- She said she had been a guest of Michael and her name began with A.
- c- She said she had been a guest of Frtiz and her name began with A.
- d- She said she had been a guest of Michael and her name began with B.

24- What information did Sapt have about Antoinette?

- a- She came to Ruritania with her servants as a guest of the king.
- b- She had a great argument with Michael and left Strelsau.
- c- She had a great argument with Michael but she was still in Strelsau.

d- She had a great argument with Michael and want to Zenda.

25- Why did Rassendyll decide to go to the summer house?

a- He thought Antoinette would be useful for them and believed her.

b- They didn't have much time and they had to move quickly to rescue the king. .

c- Every day they left the king imprisoned in the castle, there was more danger.

d- a, b and c are all correct.

26- Why did Sapt and Rassendyll disagree about going to the summer house?

a- Sapt wanted to go instead because he wanted to see the king himself.

b- Sapt thought Rassendyll would be late to go to the house.

c- Sapt thought that it was a trap to kill Rassendyll there.

d- Both a and b are correct.

27- Why did Rassendyll think they have to move quickly to save the king?

a- People might have revolted against them.

b- Michael's men might have killed him.

c- They didn't have much time and every day the king became in more danger.

d- Flavia may have been declared queen.

28- What made Sapt agree reluctantly that Rassendyll would go to the summer house?

a- Fritz could convince him.

b- Rassendyll threatened to go back to England.

c- The marshal could convince him.

d- The real king told him to do so.

29- How did Rassendyll reached the summer house?

a- He knew it before.

b- He lived there before.

c- He followed the directions Antoinette had given him in the letter.

d- He found a map of the capital with Sapt.

30- Why did Antoinette ask Rassendyll to leave the summer house quickly?

a- Because three of Michael's men would go there to kill him.

b- Because two of Michael's men would go there to kill him.

c- Because four of Michael's men would go there to kill him.

d- Because one of Michael's men would go there to kill him.

31- What was Michael's evil plan to get rid of Rassendyll and the king?

a- He would kill Rassendyll and take his body into the old town.

b- He would arrest Sapt and Fritz for murdering him.

c- A messenger would be sent to Zenda and the real king would be killed too.

d- a, b and c are correct.

32- What pushed Antoinette to help Rassendyll?

a- She didn't like to see people being killed.

b- She didn't like Michael.

c- She loved Rassendyll.

d- She didn't like Flavia.

33- According to Antoinette, why was Rassendyll never safe in Strelsau?

a- Sapt and Fritz might have killed him.

b- Michael was following him everywhere.

c- The princess was trying to get rid of him.

d- Michael's men were following both him and his guards.

34- How did Antoinette help Rassendyll to escape from the summer house?

a- She hid him from Michael's men.

b- She put a ladder against the wall to help him jump outside.

c- She told Sapt to come and help him. d- Both b and c are correct.

35- What game would Antoinette play with Michael's men after Rassendyll escaped?

a- She would tell them that Rassendyll never came.

b- She would ask her men to arrest Michael's men.

c- She would kill Michael's men.

d- She would deceive the princess.

36- What did Rassendyll ask Antionette before he left the summer house?

a- To tell him why she was helping him. b- To tell him why she went to Paris

c- To tell him why she had sent him a letter.

d- To tell him if she knew where the king was in the castle.

B) Answer the following questions:

1- Rassendyll had contradicting feelings on leaving the Princess's Palace. Illustrate.

2- In your opinion, what did the princess's words to Rassendyll on farewell mean?

3- Why do you think Rassendyll remembered what Rose said about his brother when the princess warned him?

4- How do you think Rassendyll's life changed in Ruritania?

5- Why do you think no one seem to notice that Rassendyll wasn't the real king?

6- What do you think of Rassendyll's action when he made mistakes?

7- When do you think we know that Rassendyll became popular with the Ruritarians?

8- How do you think Sapt knew that the real king was at the Castle of Zenda?

9- Sapt called (Rupert, Lauengram and Krafstein) the three biggest criminals in Ruritania? Do you agree or not? Why?

10- Why do you think Rassendyll wanted to leave for Zenda as soon as possible?

11- Why wouldn't it be a good idea for Rassendyll to go to Zenda?

12- Why do you think Sapt ordered six men to follow Rassendyll wherever he went in Strelsau?

13- Why do you think Antoinette de Mauban's letter was sent to Rassendyll?

14- How do you think Antoinette de Mauban could be useful to them?

15- Why did Sapt suspect Antoinette's real intention to send that letter?

16- How do you think Rassendyll insisted on meeting Antoinette?

17- How far was Antoinette de Mauban a reliable person in your opinion? Why?

18- According to Antoinette, Michael's plan to be king was wicked. Do you agree? Give your reasons.

19- How do you think Antoinette tried to save Rassendyll's life?

20- What would Antoinette tell the Duke's men if they didn't find Rassendyll?

21- Why couldn't Antoinette complete telling Rassendyll about the king's place?

22- Why do you think Antoinette ask Rassendyll not to trust the three famous?

Chapter: 5

Part 2

Students Book Text

10. "Stand outside and talk," I called. "I won't let you in." "That's a good idea," said the voice, who I thought must be Detchard. "Is that Mr Detchard?" I asked. "Our names are not important. We can offer you a safe journey to the border and fifty thousand English pounds," he continued. "That sounds a generous offer," I said, but of course I did not trust them at all. "Give me a minute to think." Then I told Antoinette and her servant to stand close to the wall, away from the door. "What are you going to do?" Antoinette asked. "You'll see." I picked up the iron table and held it by the legs so it was in front of me. Then I said, "Gentlemen, I'd like to accept your kind offer. Perhaps you can open the door for me." "Why don't you open the door yourself?" said Detchard. "Very well, but it opens outwards," I explained. "You'll need to step back or the door will hit you." I pretended to try and open the door, and called out, "I can't open it." "Then I'll open it," called Detchard.

10. فقلت للصوت: "قف مكانك وتحدث فلن أسمح لك بالدخول." فقال الصوت الذي اعتقدت انه بالتأكيد ديتشارد: "هذه فكرة جيدة،". فسألته: "هل أنت السيد ديتشارد؟". فقال لي: "الأسماء ليست مهمة، نحن يمكن أن نوفر لك رحلة آمنة إلى الحدود و50000 جنيه انجليزي". فقلت له: "يبدو هذا عرضا سخيا، ولكن بالطبع لم أكن أثق بهم على الإطلاق." أعطني دقيقة للتفكير. ثم قلت لأنطونيت وخدامتها أن يقفا على مقربة من الجدار، بعيدا عن الباب. فسألتي أنطونيت: "ما الذي تنوي القيام به؟" فقلت لها. "سترين". التقت الطاولة الحديدية من الساقين، وجعلتها أمامي. ثم قلت: "أيها السادة، أود قبول عرضكم السخي، إذا تفضلتم بفتح الباب لي" فقال لي ديتشارد: "ولماذا لا تقوم بفتح الباب بنفسك؟" فقلت لهم "حسنا جدا، ولكنه يفتح إلى الخارج"، وأضفت قائلا: "ستحتاجون إلى التراجع قليلا وإلا سوف يصطدم الباب بكم." تظاهرت بأنني أحاول فتح الباب، وناديتهم بصوت عالي "لا يمكنني فتحه." فقال ديتشارد "سأحاول فتحه".

11. As Detchard was walking up to the door, I moved quietly to the back of the summer house. It took him a few seconds to open the door, but as soon as he did, I ran at him as fast as I could holding the table in front of me. There was a terrible noise as all three men fired their guns at once, but I was protected by the table top. The men were all standing on the steps up to the summer house, so as I ran out, the table top hit them and they all fell down the steps. Before I knew what was happening, I too was falling down the steps, but as I was on top of the men, I managed to get up fastest and run away, firing my gun behind me.

11. وبينما كان ديتشارد يسير إلى الباب، انتقلت بهدوء إلى الجزء الخلفي من المنزل. استغرق الأمر منه بضع ثوان لفتح الباب، ولكن بمجرد أن فتحه، تقدمت نحوه بأسرع ما يمكن وأنا أمسك بالطاولة الحديدية أمامي. كان هناك صوت ضجيج رهيب عندما أطلق الرجال الثلاثة نيرانهم دفعة واحدة، ولكنني كنت محمي بالطاولة الحديدية. كان الرجال جميعا على مقربة من الباب وعندما انطلقت نحوهم وأنا أمسك بالطاولة سقطوا جميعا على الأرض. وقبل أن أدرك حقيقة ما يحدث وجدت نفسي أيضا اسقط عليهم من شدة اندفاعي ولكن سرعان ما قمت ولذت بالفرار، وأنا أطلق النيران من مسدسي خلفي.

12. There were angry shouts and more shots. I remembered what Antoinette had said about a ladder and soon found it and climbed over the wall in seconds. Running along the outside of the wall, I heard more shots but realised they were being fired by Sapt, who was trying to get into the gate. "Sapt! It's me, let's go!" I shouted. "You're safe!" he cried in surprise. "I have a fine story to tell you about a table!" I told him, as we jumped on our horses and rode quickly back to the palace.

12. كان هناك مزيدا من صيحات الغضب والطلقات النارية. تذكرت ما قالته لي أنطوانيت عن السلم وسرعان ما وجدته وقفزت من فوق الجدار للخارج ، سمعت طلقات أكثر ولكن أدركت أنه يجري إطلاق النار عليهم من قبل العقيد سابت، الذي كان يحاول الوصول إلى البوابة. فصحت فيه قائلاً: "سابت! أنه أنا، هيا نذهب!" . فصرخ مندهشاً: "أنت آمن!" فقلت له ونحن نركب الخيول مسرعين نحو القصر: "لدي قصة جميلة لأقصها عليك تتعلق بطاولة!"

13. The next day, Sapt read me the latest report from the Chief of Police. "Some interesting things have been happening this morning," said Sapt. "The police report says that the Duke of Strelsau left the capital by the road to Zenda. An hour later, he was followed by De Gautet, Bersonin and Detchard, who had a bandage around his arm," I was pleased that my shot the night before had been a good one. "Finally, listen to this: the people of the capital are not happy that the King has yet to marry the Princess. Some people say that if they do not marry soon, it would be better if the Princess married the Duke of Strelsau. However, the King is having a ball tonight for the Princess." "I don't know anything about a ball," I said. "Oh, it has all been prepared," said Fritz, "by me." "Listen," said Sapt. "You must ask the Princess to marry you tonight." "I can't do that," I said. "It wouldn't be fair to the Princess."

13. وفي اليوم التالي، قرأ لي العقيد سابت آخر تقرير امني من رئيس الشرطة. فقال سابت وهو يقرأ التقرير: " لقد حدث هذا الصباح بعض الأشياء المثيرة للاهتمام. التقرير يقول أن الدوق غادر العاصمة متجهنا إلى زندا. وبعد ساعة، عاد الدوق ومعه كل من دي جوتت ،بيرسونن وديتشارد ، الذي كان يضع ضمادة حول ذراعه" كنت سعيدا بأن طلقتي الليلة الماضية قد أصابت احدهم. وتابع سابت حديثه قائلاً: "وأخيراً، استمع إلى هذا: شعب العاصمة ليس سعيدا لأن الملك لم يتزوج الأميرة ويقول البعض أنه إذا لم يكن الزواج قريباً، فإنه سيكون من الأفضل إذا تزوجت الأميرة من الدوق. ، ورغم ذلك فإن الملك سيقوم حفلة رقص للأميرة الليلة ". فقلت له: "أنا لا أعرف أي شيء عن حفلة الرقص هذه". فقال فريتز "أوه، لقد تم الإعداد لها" فقال لي سابت: "اسمع يجب أن تطلب من الأميرة الزواج منك هذه الليلة." فقلت له: "لا أستطيع أن أفعل ذلك ففيه ظلم للأميرة".

14. That evening, the ball was a great success. After we had eaten, I sat with the Princess and some of my other guests in a small room by the palace gardens. The servants brought us coffee and we had time to talk. "You've been King for a few weeks now," said the Princess, "Everyone says you've done a very good job. I'm very pleased for you." "You know, someone once said to me, 'a person who has a position in society has responsibilities.' Recently I've realised how true this is." "Haven't you always thought that?" asked the Princess. "No, when I was younger, I didn't think I needed to worry about society, I thought that was

someone else's job," The Princess looked very surprised. "But you always knew that you would become King. How could you think that was someone else's job?"

14. كانت الحفلة ناجحة جدا وبعد تناول الطعام ، جلست مع الأميرة وبعض ضيوفي الآخرين في غرفة صغيرة بجوار حدائق القصر. جلب الخدم لنا القهوة وكان لدينا الوقت للحديث. فقالت لي الأميرة: " أنت الملك لبضعة أسابيع حتى الآن والكل يشهد لك بالكفاءة. وأنا سعيدة بك". فقلت لها: "ذات مرة قال لي شخص إن الشخص الذي لديه مكانة في المجتمع عليه أيضا مسؤوليات ولقد أدركت مؤخرا مدى صحة ذلك". فسألنتي الأميرة: "الم تفكر في ذلك؟". فقلت لها " لم أفكر في ذلك، فعندما كنت صغيرا، لم أكن أعتقد أنني بحاجة للقلق بشأن المجتمع، لأنه مهمة شخص آخر،" اندهشت الأميرة للغاية. وقالت: "لكنك كنت دائما على علم أنك ستصبح الملك. فكيف يمكن أن تعتقد أن هذا العمل مهمة شخص آخر؟"

15. Once again, I had made a mistake in what I said. But suddenly, instead of saying something to cover up my mistake, I wanted to tell the Princess the truth. She was kind and clever and she was going to marry the King. She should know what had happened to her future husband, and she should know all about my game. I decided I had to tell her everything. "Flavia," I said quietly, so none of the other guests could hear, "there's something you should know. I'm not really ... " But I never finished the words I wanted to say because at that moment, we heard footsteps in the garden outside the room. I looked up and jumped with fright, because a face suddenly appeared at the **French window**.

15. مرة أخرى، ارتكبت خطأ في ما قلته. ولكن فجأة، وبدلا من أن قول شيء للتغطية على خطأي، أردت أن أقول للأميرة الحقيقة. وكانت عطوفة وذكية كما أنها كانت ستتزوج الملك. لذا ينبغي أن تعرف ما حدث لزوجها في المستقبل، وأنها يجب أن تعرف كل شيء عن قيامي بدور الملك. فقررت أنني لابد أن أقول لها كل شيء. فقلت لها بهدوء لكي لا يسمعي احد من الضيوف الآخرين: "فلافيا هناك شيء يجب أن تعرفيه، إنني حقا لست " لم أكمل ما أردت أن أقوله لها لأنه في تلك اللحظة، سمعنا صوت خطي في الحديقة خارج الغرفة. نظرت إلى أعلى وقفزت من شدة الخوف، لأن وجه ظهر فجأة من النافذة الفرنسية.

16. I relaxed when I saw that the person looking in on us was Sapt. "I apologise, but there's someone who wants to see you, sir," he said to me, but I could tell from his eyes that he was angry. How long had he been listening to my conversation with the Princess? Had he heard that I was about to tell her the truth about who I really was? We returned to the ball where the Princess went quickly away with her servants and I was welcomed by other important people at the ball. I realised then that my game had gone too far to go back: I could not tell anyone who I really was or they would think I was mad. Sapt had stopped me from saying too much to the Princess, and Sapt's plan really was working.

16. شعرت بالهدوء عندما رأيت أن الشخص الذي كان ينظر من النافذة هو العقيد سابت. فقال لي: "معذرة ، ولكن هناك من يريد أن يقابلك، يا سيدي،" ولكنني يمكنني أن أدرك من عينيه انه كان غاضبا. ترى كم من الوقت قد استمع إلى حديثي مع الأميرة؟ و هل سمع أنني كنت على وشك أن اكتشف لها عن حقيقتي؟ عدنا إلى الحفلة وأسرعت الأميرة مع خدمها وقام بعض الناس المهمين بالترحيب بي. ثم أدركت أن قيامي بدور الملك قد وصل إلى مرحلة يستحيل التراجع

عنها : فأنا لا يمكنني أن اخبر أي شخص عن حقيقتي وإلا سيعتقد أنني مجنون. لقد منعني العقيد سابت من التحدث كثيرا مع الأميرة، وقد كان محقا.

17. The next morning, Sapt and I sat in my room thinking about what to do next. "Do you realise," I said, "that everyone really thinks I'm the King, even the Princess? I could even arrange for the Duke and the real King to be killed." "This is all true," said Sapt. "So will you do such a thing?" "Of course not. I shouldn't be here, pretending to be anything. It isn't fair for the people of Ruritania and it isn't fair for the Princess, either. We can't wait any longer," I said. "We must go to Zenda and rescue the King." "You're a good man," said Sapt.

17. وفي صباح اليوم التالي جلست، أنا والعقيد سابت في غرفتي لنفكر فيما يجب القيام به بعد ذلك. فقلت له: "هل تعلم أن الجميع يعتقد حقا أنني الملك، حتى الأميرة؟ إنني يمكنني أن ارتب للتخلص من الدوق والملك الحقيقي معا" فقال لي: "هذا كله صحيح ولكن هل ستفعل مثل هذا الشيء؟" فقلت له: "بالطبع لا. لا ينبغي لي أن أفعل ذلك، فليس ذلك من العدل لشعب روريتانيا كما انه ليس من العدل للأميرة"، وأضفت قائلا: "لا يمكننا الانتظار أكثر من ذلك، يجب أن نذهب إلى زندا وننقذ الملك." فقال لي: "أنت رجل صالح".

18. First, however, I needed to see Princess Flavia again. If I could not tell her the truth, I could at least warn her that the situation in Ruritania was not as good as she believed it to be. I visited her in her palace later that day, and she asked her servants to bring me some coffee. Then she told me that she had received two letters. One was from Michael, who had invited her to visit Zenda. Then she showed me the other letter. "I don't know who this one's from," she said. I immediately knew who it was from: the writing was the same as the letter I had received. It was from Antoinette de Mauban and it read: (*You do not know me, but I do not want you to fall into the power of the Duke. Do not accept any invitation from him and do not go anywhere without many guards. Show this letter, if you can, to the leader of Ruritania.*)

18. في البداية ، كنت بحاجة لمقابلة الأميرة فلافيا مرة أخرى. فإذا لم أستطع أن أقول لها الحقيقة، فعلى الأقل أخبرها بأن الوضع في روريتانيا ليس جيدا كما يبدو لها. فقامت بزيارة لها في قصرها في وقت لاحق من ذلك اليوم، وطلبت من خدمها أن يحضروا لي بعض القهوة. ثم قالت لي أنها قد تلقت رسالتين. احدهما من مايكل، يدعوها لزيارة زندا. ثم بينت لي الرسالة الأخرى. وقالت لي: (أنا لا أعرف من صاحب هذه الرسالة" علمت على الفور من صاحب الرسالة: إنها انطونيت دو موبان لأنها بنفس خط الرسالة التي تلقيتها منها. وتقول في رسالتها: "أنتي لا تعرفيني ، ولكن أنا لا أريد منك أن تقعي في قبضة الدوق. لا تقبلي أي دعوة منه ولا تذهبي لأي مكان دون حراسة مشددة. أعطى هذه الرسالة إلى زعيم "قائد" روريتانيا ، إن استطعت ذلك).

19. "Why does it say 'the leader' and not 'the King'?" she asked. "You must do as the letter says," I said, not answering her question. "I'll order guards to watch you." "Do you know who sent this?" she asked. "A friend of mine. Today you must say you're ill so you can't go to Zenda." "So you don't mind making Michael angry?" she asked. "I don't mind anything if you're safe," I said.

19. فتساءلت الأميرة: "لماذا تقول 'زعيم' وليس 'ملك'؟". فقلت لها: "يجب أن تفعل كما تقوله الرسالة"، ولم ارد على سؤالها. فقلت لها: "سأطلب حراسة مشددة لحمايتك". فسألتني: "هل تعرف من الذي أرسل هذه الرسالة؟". فقلت لها: "صديق لي، واليوم يجب أن تقولي أنك مريضة وبالتالي لا يمكنك الذهاب إلى زندا". فقلت لي: "أليس لديك مانع من إغضاب الدوق مايكل؟". فقلت لها: "أنا لا أمانع أي شيء يحافظ على أمنك".

20. I had an idea about who would be the best guard for Princess Flavia, and I immediately visited Marshal Strakencz, who I knew I could trust. I asked him to guard the Princess and not to allow any of the Duke's men to visit her. I told him I was worried about the Duke's ambitions, and he did not look surprised. "I'm leaving Strelsau for a few days," I told him. "Every evening, I'll send you a message. If you don't get a message for three days, you have the authority to say that you are now the head of Strelsau. You must then ask the Duke to allow you to see the King. If he doesn't allow you to see the King in twenty-four hours, you must say that the King's dead. Then you must tell the people of Ruritania who their new ruler will be. You do know who that will be?" "Princess Flavia, of course," he answered.

20. فكرت فيمن سيكون أفضل حارس للأميرة فلافيا، وعلى الفور قمت بزيارة المشير ستراكنتش، الذي كنت أعرف أنني يمكنني أن أثق به وطلبت منه حراسة الأميرة وعدم السماح لأي من رجال الدوق بزيارتها. وقلت له أنني قلقا بشأن طموحات الدوق، ولم يندهش بقولي هذا. وقلت له: "سأغادر العاصمة سترلسو لبضعة أيام وكل مساء سوف أرسل لك رسالة، وإذا لم تصلك رسالة مني لمدة ثلاثة أيام، لديك السلطة أن تقول أنك الآن رئيس العاصمة سترلسو. و يجب عليك أن تطلب من الدوق أن يسمح لك أن ترى الملك، وإذا لم يسمح لك بذلك في أربع وعشرين ساعة، يجب عليك أن تعلن أن الملك قد مات، ثم يجب أن تعلن لشعب روريتانيا عن حاكمهم الجديد من سيكون" ثم سألته " أتعرف من سيكون ؟ " فأجابني قائلا "الأميرة فلافيا، بطبيعة الحال".

Answer The Following Questions

A) Choose the correct answer :

1- What did Detchard offer Rassendyll at the summer house?

- a- A safe journey to England and fifty thousand English pounds.
- b- A safe journey to the border and fifty thousand pieces of gold.
- c- A safe journey to the border and fifty thousand English pounds.
- d- A safe journey to the border and forty thousand English pounds.

2- Why did Rassendyll ask Antoinette to stand close to the wall?

- a- To show them his weapons.
- b- To protect himself from them
- c- So as not to see Michael's men.
- d- To protect them from Michael's men.

3- How could Rassendyll protect himself before attacking Michael's men in the summer house?

- a- He picked up the table and held it by the legs so it was in front of him.
- b- He used Antoinette and her servants as a protective shield
- c- He hide behind the ladies.
- d- He used his sword .

4- How could Rassendyll trick Michael's men in the summer house?

How could Rassendyll escape from Michael's men in the summer house?

- a- He pretended that he accepted their kind offer.
- b- He attacked them with the iron table so they fell down the steps.
- c- He managed to run faster than them and escape.
- d- a, b & c are correct.

5- What funny story did Rassendyll want to tell Sapt?

- a- The story of his using an iron table to fight Michael's men.
- b- The story of Michael and Antoinette.
- c- The story of Flavia and Rassendyll.
- d- The story of the king's rescue mission.

6- What did the report from the chief of police in Strelsau say?

- a- The people weren't happy that the Duke had yet to marry the Princess.
- b- The Duke and three of his men left the capital by the road to Zenda.
- c- The people are all plotting against the king.
- d- Both a & b are correct.

7- Why was there a bandage around Detchard's arm?

- a- Because Rassendyll had shot at him at the summer house.
- b- an animal hit him.
- c- a dog bit him
- d- the door injured him.

8- What did Sapt want Rassendyll to do at the ball?

- a- He wanted Rassendyll to ask the princess to help him.
- b- He wanted Rassendyll to ask the princess to marry him.
- c- He wanted Rassendyll to ask the princess to tell him the secret of the king.
- d- He wanted Rassendyll to ask the princess to get rid of Michael .

9- Why didn't Rassendyll agree to ask the princess to marry him?

- a- Because he didn't love her.
- b- Because she loved Michael.
- c- Because it wasn't fair for the princess.
- d- The king was kidnapped.

10- Why was Flavia pleased for Rassendyll [the king]?

- a- As everyone said that he had done a very good job as a king.
- b- As he could get rid of Michael.
- c- As he could get rid of the marshal.
- d- As he could injure Michael's men.

11- When did Rassendyll realize that Rose's words about responsibility were true?

- a- After the coronation
- b- When he became an ambassador.
- c- When he became lord.
- d- When he had many responsibilities as a king.

12- What mistake did Rassendyll make while sitting with the princess during the ball?

- a- He told her when he was younger, he didn't think he'd worry about society.
- b- He told her he thought that society care was someone else's job.
- c- He told her he was really Rassendyll.
- d- Both a & b are correct.

13- Why did Rassendyll want to tell the princess the truth about his not being the real king?

- a- She was kind and clever.
- b- She was going to marry the king.

c- She should know what had happened to her future husband.

d- a, b and c are all correct.

14- Why couldn't Rassendyll tell the princess the truth during the ball?

a- As Sapt appeared suddenly to tell him there was someone to see him.

b- As the king arrived suddenly.

c- As Fritz didn't allow him to do this.

d- Michael came at that time and prohibited him.

15- What made Rassendyll think his game had gone too far to go back?

a- As he couldn't tell anyone who he really was or they would think he was mad.

b- Because Michael had declared himself a king.

c- As the princess married the king.

d- Both a and b are correct.

16- Why could Rassendyll arrange for the Duke and the real king to be killed and stay king forever?

a- As Flavia would support him to do so.

b- As Sapt and Gritz asked him to do so.

c- As the marshal would side him.

d- As everyone really thought he was the king.

17- Why couldn't Rassendyll continue playing the role of the king forever?

a- It wasn't fair for the people of England and the Princess.

b- It wasn't fair for the people of Ruritania and the Duke.

c- It wasn't fair for the people of Ruritania and the Princess.

d- It wasn't fair for the people of Ruritania and the marshal.

18- Why did Rassendyll visit the Princess again after the party?

a- To warn her that the situation in Ruritania was not as good as she believed.

b- To ask her to marry him.

c- To tell her the truth about his identity.

d- To warn her against the marshal.

19- What two letters did the princess receive?

a- One was from Michael and the other was from Antoinette de Mauban.

b- One was from the duke and the other from the king.

c- One was from the king and the other from Sapt.

d- One was from Antoinette and other from Sapt.

20- What made Rassendyll guess that Antoinette was the sender of the letter which Flavia received?

a- As it initialized with her name.

b- As the writing was the same as the letter he had received from her before.

c- As she told him she would send a letter to the princess.

d- As Sapt told him that Antoinette would send a letter to the princess.

21- What did Antoinette tell Flavia in her letter to her?

a- She asked her not to go anywhere without many guards.

b- She asked her not to accept any invitation from Michael.

c- She asked her to show that letter to the leader of Ruritania.

d- a, b and c are correct.

22- How would Flavia reply to Michael's invitation to her? - She would say

- a- she was too ill to go. b- she was too worried to go.
c- she was too exhausted to go. d- she was too upset to go.

23- What would the Marshal do if he didn't receive a message from the king for three days?

- a- He'd announce Michael as a king. b- He'd announce Flavia as a queen.
c- He'd announce Rassendyll as a king. d- He'd take the throne for himself.

24- Who did Rassendyll trust to protect the princess in his absence?

- a- Fritz b- Sapt c- The Marshal d- Michael

B) Answer the following questions:

1- What do you think of the offer which Detchard talked about?

2- Rassendyll said that their offer was generous. Did he mean it?

3- Rassendyll was so clever that he could escape from Michael's men. Illustrate

4- Rassendyll was intelligent to use the iron table as a weapon. Illustrate.

5- How do you think Rassendyll could escape from the garden?

6- Why do you think Sapt was surprised that Rassendyll was safe?

7- How do you think Rassendyll knew that his shot was a good one?

8- Why weren't the people happy that the king had yet to marry the princess?

9- Ruritania was more important to Sapt than feelings. Discuss.

10- What was the ball like in your opinion?

11- When do you think Rassendyll knew that Rose's words were true?

12- What do you think of the 2nd mistake Rassendyll made when he was talking to the Princess?

13- Why do you think Rassendyll realised that he made a mistake?

14- Why do you think Rassendyll wanted to tell the Princess the truth?

15- Sapt was always near to stop Rassendyll from making mistakes. Discuss.

16- When do you think Rassendyll realised his game had gone too far to go back?

17- Rassendyll was a good faithful man. Illustrate.

18- How do you think Sapt praised Rassendyll when he decided to rescue the real king? Why?

19- Why do you think Rassendyll wanted to see Princess Flavia again?

20- Why do you think Antoinette ask the Princess to show the letter to the leader of Ruritania?

21- Antoinette was helpful for Rassendyll and the princess. Explain.

22- What do you think Rassendyll's plan to save Flavia from Michael was?

23- Why do you think Rassendyll trusted the marshal to guard the Princess?

24- What do you think of the orders that Rassendyll gave the Marshal?

25- Why do you think Rassendyll had to send the Marshal a message every evening?

26- How do you think Rassendyll plan the future of Ruritania if he failed to rescue the king?

Chapter: 6

Part 1

Students Book Text

1. It was nearly time for us to make a move against Duke Michael. I was with Marshal Strakencz who I had to trust to keep the future of Ruritania safe. "You must promise that you'll protect Princess Flavia from the Duke." I told him. "As you know, his mother was not royal and he can only legally become King if he marries the Princess." "I promise." Marshal Strakencz said, bowing. "Now I'll write down what I've just said. But my finger still hurts." "Yes, sir," he said, watching me write. "The writing's a little different from your usual. I hope people know it's a real order from the King." "I trust you" I told him and he smiled. "The Princess will be safe with me." he said.

لقد حان الوقت تقريباً بالنسبة لنا لاتخاذ خطوة ضد الدوق مايكل .كنت مع المارشال ستراكنتش الذي لم أجد أفضل منه للحفاظ على مستقبل روريتانيا. قلت له: "يجب أن تعدني أنك ستحمي الاميرة فلافيا من الدوق. فكما تعلم، لم تكن والدته من العائلة الملكية وانه يمكن فقط أن يصبح ملك بصورة قانونية إذا تزوج الأميرة." فقال المارشال ستراكنتش وهو ينحنى: "أتعهد بذلك،" "الآن سأكتب ما قلت توأ، ولكن لا يزال إصبعي يؤلمني." فقال وهو يشاهدني أكتب: "نعم، يا سيدي، وهذه الكتابة مختلفة قليلا عن المعتاد منك، وأمل أن يعرف الناس انها أمر حقيقي من الملك." قلت له: "أنا أثق بك" فابتسم قائلاً: "الأميرة ستكون آمنة معي."

2. I returned to the palace and told Sapt and Fritz to get ready to go to Zenda. There was only one thing left for me to do before we went. I went to tell Flavia that I was leaving Strelsau to go hunting. "So you'd prefer to hunt animals than do your duties in the capital?" she asked quietly. "The thing I hunt is a very big animal," I explained. "Because I'll be hunting Michael." The Princess looked very worried. "This'll be dangerous!" she said. "If I don't come back, you must become Queen for me." She then stood tall and said, "I don't really know what's going on, but I'll do whatever is right for Ruritania. If that means becoming the Queen, then so be it." "Thank you," I said. "Let us hope that it's not necessary." I knew, however, that this was more than possible.

عدت إلى القصر واخبرت فريتز وسابت ان يستعدوا للذهاب إلى زندا، لم يكن هناك سوى شيء واحد يجب علي القيام به قبل ذهابنا، ذهبت لأخبر فلافيا اننى سأترك سترلسو للذهاب للصيد. سألتني بهدوء: "لذلك تفضل أن تصطاد الحيوانات على ان تقوم بواجباتك في العاصمة؟" فشرحت لها: "الشيء الذى سأصطاده هو حيوان كبير جدا، لأنى سوف أصطاد مايكل." بدت الأميرة قلقة للغاية وقالت: "سوف يكون هذا خطيراً!" "إن لم أعود، يجب أن تصبحى ملكة مكاني." ثم وقفت .. وقالت: "أنا لا أعرف حقاً ما يجري، ولكنى سأفعل كل ما هو فى صالح روريتانيا، فإذا كان ذلك يعني أن أصبح ملكة، فليكن." قلت: "شكراً لك وكن دعينا نأمل أن ذلك ليس ضرورياً." كنت أعرف، مع ذلك، أن هذا كان أكثر من ممكن.

3. About eight kilometres from Zenda, on the opposite side of the town to where the castle stands, there is a leafy wood on a low hill. On top of the hill is a large,

modern country house called Tarlenheim which belongs to a relative of Fritz. He does not often visit the house, so when Fritz asked if we could use it for a hunting trip, he happily agreed.

على بعد حوالي ثمانية كيلومترات من زندا، وعلى الجانب الآخر من المدينة إلى حيث تقع القلعة، هناك غابة مورقة على تل منخفض. وعلى قمة التل يوجد بيت ريفي حديث وكبير يسمى تارلينهيم و الذي ينتمي إلى أحد أقارب فريترز والذي كان لا يزور البت في كثير من الأحيان ، حتى انه عندما سئله فريترز عما اذا كان يمكننا استخدامه لرحلة صيد، وافق دون تردد.

4. So the next day, Sapt, Fritz and I set off from the capital and arrived at the country house at about midday, with a large party of servants and ten brave and strong gentlemen that I trusted. We had told these men that Michael had tried to kill me and that a good friend of the King's was held prisoner in the castle. They knew it was our job to set him free, and being brave and loyal, they didn't need to ask any more questions. However, it didn't take long for Duke Michael to hear about our arrival, and after only an hour, we were visited by three of his famous Six Men: the Ruritanians Lauengram, Krafstein and Rupert Hentzau. I'm sure they knew that we were not really there to hunt animals but had a much bigger plan.

لذلك، في اليوم التالي، أنطلقنا ان وسابت وفريترز من العاصمة ووصلنا إلى المنزل الريفي نحو منتصف النهار، وكان معنا مجموعة كبيرة من الخدم وعشرة من الرجال الشجعان والاقوياء الذين أثق بهم، وقد أخبرنا هؤلاء الرجال أن مايكل حاول قتلي وأن صديق مقرب من الملك تم سجنه في القلعة، وعلم الرجال ان مهمتنا هي اطلاق سراحه، ولأنهم شجعان ومخلصين فلم يلجئوا إلى طرح أسئلة أكثر. ومع ذلك، لم يمر وقتا طويلا حتى سمع الدوق مايكل عن وصولنا، وبعد ساعة فقط، وقام بزيارتنا ثلاثة من رجاله الستة المشهورون وهم الروريتانيين: لوينجرام وكرافستين وروبرت هنتزو، وكنت واثقا من أنهم يعرفون أننا لم نكن هناك حقا لاصطياد الحيوانات ولكن لدينا خطة أكبر من ذلك بكثير.

5. The youngest and strongest of the three, Rupert Hentzau, told us how sorry the Duke was that we could not stay in his mansion, but unfortunately the Duke and many of his servants had a dangerous illness, so it was best if we stayed away. His speech was formal and polite, but I did not believe a word he said. "I'm sorry to hear this," I said to them. "I hope my brother feels better soon. And what of your friends De Gautet, Bersonin and Detchard? I heard that Detchard was injured?" Rupert smiled at me and said, "You needn't worry, Detchard will be fine." "Good. Perhaps you would like to stay and eat with us?" I said. "You're very kind," said Rupert, "but unfortunately we have important duties and need to get back to at the castle." "Of course you do," I laughed. "Thank you for coming. I look forward to seeing you all again." When they had gone, Sapt said, "That Rupert's the worst criminal of them all!"

اخبرنا أصغر الثلاثة وأقواهم ، روبرت هنتزو، كيف كان الدوق مستاءاً أننا لم نستطع الإقامة في قصره، ولكن لسوء الحظ فالدوق والعديد من خدمه أصيبوا بمرض خطير، لذلك كان أفضل لو بقينا بعيدا. كان خطابه رسمياً ومهذباً، ولكني لم أصدق أى كلمة مما قال. قلت له: "أنا آسف لسماع هذا، أمل أن أخي يشعر على نحو أفضل في وقت قريب. ولكن ماذا عن اصدقائك : دى جوتيت ودى تشارد وبيرسونين؟ سمعت أن دى تشارد أصيب؟" ابتسم روبرت في وجهي، وقال:

"لا داعي للقلق، سوف يكون دي تشارد على ما يرام." فقلت: "جيد، ربما كنت ترغب في البقاء وتناول الطعام معنا؟" فقال روبرت: "أنت رقيق جداً، ولكن للأسف لدينا واجبات مهمة ونحتاج ان نعود الى القلعة". فضحكت وقلت: "بالطبع ستفعل ذلك، شكرا لكم على حضوركم، وأتطلع إلى رؤيتكم جميعاً مرة أخرى." وقال سابت عندما ذهبوا: "روبرت هذا هو أسوأ هؤلاء المجرمين!"

6. That evening, I set off for Zenda with Fritz. Our journey, we knew, could be a dangerous one, but my face was covered and we felt safe because there were many people on the roads. We did not go near the castle, however, but went to the inn where I had stayed on my first night in Ruritania. "I've been here before," I told Fritz. "Won't they recognise you, then?" he said. "Of course. Just do as I say and everything will be fine."

في ذلك المساء، أنطلقت الى زندا مع فريتز. وكانت رحلتنا، كما نعرف، يمكن أن تكون خطيرة، ولكني قمت بتغطية وجهي وشعرنا بالأمان لأن الكثير من الناس كانوا في الطرقات، ومع هذا نحن لم نذهب بالقرب من القلعة، ولكن ذهبنا إلى الفندق الريفى حيث كنت قد قضيت ليلتي الأولى في روريتانيا. قلت لفريتز: "لقد كنت هنا من قبل" فقال: "ألن يتعرفوا عليك؟" فقلت: "بالطبع، فقط افعل كما أقول لك وكل شيء سيكون على ما يرام."

7. I kept the coat over my face as we entered the inn and we asked to have a meal in a quiet room at the back. When the owner's daughter brought us our food, I uncovered my face so she could see me. "You're the King!" she cried, almost dropping our plates. "I remember you when you stayed with us. I told my mother you weren't really an Englishman and that you were the King! I'm sorry if we said anything bad when you stayed with us." "I'll forgive you if you promise to help us," I said. I explained that I wanted to see Johann. "He never comes here any more," she explained. "He works at the castle now." "But you're still friends and you must ask to see him," I told her. "Tell him to meet you tomorrow night at ten o'clock, then bring him to our house. And tell no one that you've seen the King. Do you understand?" "You won't hurt him, will you, sir?" "Not if he does as we ask," I promised.

كان معطفي على وجهي عندما دخلنا النزل وطلبنا تناول وجبة في غرفة هادئة في الخلف، عندما جاءت ابنة صاحبة النزل بطعامنا كشفت وجهي حتى تتمكن من رؤيتي. فصرخت: "أنت الملك!"، و تقريبا اسقطت الاطباق، وقالت: "أنتذكر عندما بقيت معنا. قلت لأمي أنك لم تكن حقا رجل إنجليزي وانك كنت ملك! أنا آسفة إذا قلنا أي شيء سيئ عندما بقيت معنا." فقلت: "سوف أغفر لك إذا وعدت أن تساعدنا". وأوضحت أنني أريد أن أرى جوهان. فأوضحت: "إنه لم يعد يأتي أبدا الى هنا، انه يعمل في القلعة الآن". قلت لها: "لكنكم ما زلتم أصدقاء ويجب عليك أن تطلبى رؤيته، قول له أن يأتي للقائك ليلة الغد في الساعة العاشرة، ثم أحضره الى منزلنا، ولا تخبرى أحداً أنك قد رأيت الملك، هل تفهمين؟" "أنت لن تضره، أليس كذلك يا سيدي؟" فوعدها: "لن أفعل ذلك اذا فعل ما أطلبه."

8. She agreed happily, and after our meal we returned to Tarlenheim late that night. As we got off our horses, Sapt ran out of the house and cried, "So you're safe!" "We're fine. Why shouldn't we be?" "It seems that it's dangerous to ride in this area unless you're in a large group. One of our men, Bernenstein, went out

alone in the woods today. He saw three men in the trees and one shot him. He's upstairs in bed with a bullet in his arm. The next bullet could be for you."

لقد وافقت وهى سعيدة، وبعد وجبتنا عدنا إلى تارلينهيم فى وقت متأخر من تلك الليلة. وعندما كنا ننزل من على خيولنا، خرج سابت مسرعاً من المنزل وصاح: "إذا أنتم فى أمان!" فقلت: "نحن بخير، فلماذا لا نكون؟" فقال: "يبدو أن ركوب الخيل فى هذا المنطقة أمر خطير إلا إذا كنت فى مجموعة كبيرة. فقد ذهب احد رجالنا، وهو بيرنستين، وحده فى الغابة اليوم، ورأى ثلاثة رجال بين الأشجار واحدهم أطلق عليه النار. انه بالطابق العلوي فى السرير وهناك عيار ناري فى زراعته. الرصاصة القادمة قد تكون لك."

9. We thought that we would be safe in the country house, but I was wrong. The next day, I was resting in the living room when Rupert visited the house alone. "I have a message for you, Rassendyll," he said. "If you do not know how to address the King, my brother must find another messenger," I replied coldly. "Why do you continue to pretend?" he laughed. "We all know who you are." "But you can't say that in public, can you? Because then people would know you've kidnapped the real King. You know the game's not finished yet, and until it is, I will choose my own name," I said. "So, what is your message?" "The Duke offers you more than I would. He offers you a safe journey to the border and a million gold pieces." "Tell the Duke that I refuse his generous offer. How's his prisoner, by the way?" "He's still alive," said Rupert. "Good, now go from here, while you can," I said.

كنا نظن أننا سنكون فى مأمن فى المنزل الريفى، ولكن كنت على خطأ، ففي اليوم التالي، كنت أستريح فى غرفة المعيشة عندما زار روبرت المنزل وحده. وقال: "لدي رسالة لك، يا راسندل" فأجبت ببرود: "إذا كنت لا تعرف كيفية التعامل مع الملك فعلى أخي أن يجد رسولاً آخر" فضحك وقال: "لماذا الاستمرار فى التظاهر؟ ونحن نعلم جميعاً من أنت". فقلت: "لكن لا يمكن ان تقول هذا على الملأ، أليس كذلك؟ لأن الناس سوف تعرف عند ذلك انكم قد اختطفتم الملك الحقيقي، أنت تعرف ان اللعبة لم تنته بعد، وحتى يتم ذلك سوف تختار اسمى، ولكن، ما هي رسالتكم؟" "الدوق يقدم لك أكثر مما اتوقع، انه يعرض عليك رحلة أمنة الى الحدود و مليون قطعة من الذهب". "قل للدوق أننى أرفض عرضه السخي. كيف حال سجينه، بالمناسبة؟" فقال روبرت: "ما زال حياً". فقلت: "ممتاز، الآن أذهب من هنا بأسرع ما يمكنك".

Answer The Following Questions

A) Choose the correct answer :

1. Why did Rassendyll, Sapt, Fritz decide to make a move against Michael?

- a) Michael had a dangerous illness
- b) They wanted to save the imprisoned King
- c) Michael wanted to marry Flavia
- d) Michael imprisoned Antoinette de Mauban

2. Who did King Rassendyll trust to keep the future of Ruritania safe?

- a) Sapt
- b) Antoinette de Mauban
- c) Flavia
- d) Marshal Strakencz

3. When could Duke Michael legally become King?

- a) If he married Princess Flavia
- b) If he killed the real king
- c) If he was popular among the rich
- d) If he could kill Rassendyll and Fritz

4. What must Marshal Strakencz promise King Rassendyll to do?

- a) To set the real king free
- b) To defend Rassendyll against Duke Michael
- c) To keep Rassendyll's secrets
- d) To protect the Princess from Duke Michael

5. How much did Rassendyll trust the Marshal?

- a) He trusted him to keep the future of Ruritania safe
- b) He asked him to protect Princess Flavia from the Duke
- c) He didn't trust him at all
- d) both a and b are correct

6. Rassendyll's writing was different from the King's. What reason did he give?

- a) he has an injured finger
- b) he wasn't the real king
- c) he was exhausted
- d) his hand ached

7. Why might this difference be a problem for Marshal Strakencz?

- a) People might think Rassendyll's finger was injured
- b) People might think it was not a real order from the King
- c) People might think Rassendyll wasn't the king
- d) People might think Strakencz the King

8. What reason did Rassendyll give Princess Flavia for leaving Strelsau?

- a) He was going to set the king free
- b) He was going to hunt the Six Men
- c) He was going to hunt a big animal
- d) He was going to stay in the inn

9. What did Rassendyll ask Flavia to do if he didn't come back?

- a) She must try to save the real king
- b) She must come to see him in Zenda
- c) She must agree to marry Michael
- d) She must become Queen of Ruritania

10. Why did Princess Flavia feel worried when Rassendyll told her he was going to hunt Michael?

- a) She thought it would be dangerous
- b) She thought Michael would be killed
- c) She thought she would be in danger
- d) She thought Sapt might be the king

11. Who accompanied Rassendyll, Sapt and Fritz to Zenda?

- a) The Six Men
- b) Flavia and Marshal Strakencz
- c) Servants and ten brave strong men
- d) A big army led by Marshal Strakencz

12. What did Rassendyll tell his men about their mission?

- a) Michael tried to kill the King b) The King's friend escaped the Castle
c) It was their job to set the King's friend free d) a & b are all correct

13. Where did Rassendyll and his men stay for their hunting trip?

- a) In a country house called Tarlenheim b) In the hunting lodge
c) In the castle of Zenda d) In Duke Michael's mansion

14. Who does the country house belong to?

- a) Fritz b) Antoinette c) a relative of Fritz d) the king

15. Who first visited King Rassendyll at the country house of Tarlenheim?

- a) Michael's Six Men b) Three of Michael's Six Men
c) Only Rupert Hentzau d) Only Duke Michael

16. According to Sapt, who was the worst criminal of Michael's Six Men?

- a) De Gautet b) Bersonin c) Detchard d) Rupert Hentzau

17. What reason does Michael give for not visiting "King" Rassendyll or inviting him to his castle?

- a) Michael had an important meeting
b) Michael wasn't in the Castle c) Michael and his men were busy
d) Michael and many servants had an illness

18. Why did Rassendyll and Fritz feel safe on their way to Zenda?

- a) There were many people on the roads
b) The Chief of police was in Zenda
c) Michael and his men had an illness
d) They were going near the castle

19. Why did Rassendyll and Fritz go to the inn at Zenda?

- a) To ask the daughter about Michael b) To speak to the innkeeper
c) To meet the innkeeper and her daughters d) To ask for Johann

20. Who did they talk to in the inn at Zenda?

- a) The innkeeper's daughter b) Johann
c) Johann and the innkeeper's daughter
d) The innkeeper and her daughters

21. What did Rassendyll ask the innkeeper's daughter to do?

- a) To tell anyone she had seen the King b) To bring Johann to Tarlenheim
c) To tell him information about Michael d) To bring Rupert to Tarlenheim

22. What happened to Bernenstein in the woods?

- a) He was killed b) He was shot in the arm
c) He was imprisoned In the Castle of Zenda d) He was shot in the leg

23. Why couldn't Michael say in public that Rassendyll wasn't the real King?

- a) People would know Michael liked the king
b) People would know Rassendyll was a liar
c) People would know they killed the real King
d) People would know they kidnapped the real King

24. What offer did Rupert Hentzau bring to Rassendyll at Tarlenheim?

- a) a safe journey to the border b) a million gold pieces
c) a thousand gold pieces d) both a & b are correct

25. How did Rassendyll reply to Michael's second offer?

- a) He accepted it b) He asked for some time to think about it
c) He asked for more money d) He refused it

B) Answer the following questions:

- 1- What do you think proved that Rassendyll trusted Marshal Strakencz so much?
- 2- In your point of view, how would the Marshal keep the future of Ruritania safe?
- 3- Why do you think the Duke might want to marry Princess Flavia?
- 4- Duke Michael's mother wasn't royal. Does this have an effect on Michael's life?
- 5- Why do you think Rassendyll wrote down what he'd agreed on with Strakencz?
- 6- Why do you think Rassendyll ask Flavia to be queen if he didn't come back?
- 7- How do you think Flavia showed that she loved her country?
- 8- How do you think Rassendyll could persuade the ten men to join him to Zenda?
- 9- Show that the men whom the pretend king took with him were brave and loyal.
- 10- Why do you think Rassendyll needed brave loyal men during his trip to Zenda?
- 11- Why do you think Tarlenheim was a good position for Rassendyll and his men?
- 12- Why do you think Rupert said Michael and many of his men had an illness?
- 13- What do you think Rassendyll thought of Rupert's first talk to him?
- 14- What was Sapt's opinion of Rupert Hentzau? Was he right?
- 15- Why do you think Rassendyll felt safe when he set off for Zenda with Fritz?
- 16- Why do you think Rassendyll uncovered his face in front of the inn daughter?
- 17- How do you think the owner's daughter was mistaken about Rassendyll ?
- 18- Why do you think the owner's daughter apologized to Rassendyll?
- 19- Why do you think the girl agreed happily to bring Johann to the king?
- 20- Why do you think Sapt was waiting impatiently in the country house?
- 21- Why do you think it seemed dangerous for Rassendyll to ride in the woods alone without a guard?
- 22- Why do you think Bernenstein was shot?
- 22- Why do you think they weren't safe in the country house ?
- 23- Why do you think Rupert visited the country house the following day?
- 24- Why do you think Rupert asked Rassendyll to stop pretending to be the king?
- 25- Although Rupert knew Rassendyll's game, Rassendyll was confident. Illustrate.
- 26- What do you think made Michael offer Rassendyll too much money twice?
- 27- Why do you think Rassendyll refused Michael's second offer?
- 28- What do you think would happen if Rassendyll accepted this offer?

Chapter: 6

Part 2

Students Book Text

10. Rupert gave me a cold look and asked his servant to prepare his horse. I followed him out of the house, and just as he was about to climb on his horse, he stopped and said, "Let's shake hands." He stepped nearer to me and suddenly **stabbed** me in the shoulder with his knife. I cried out, but Rupert rode off fast before I could do anything.

نظر روبرت لي نظرة باردة وطلب من خادمه أن يعد حصانه، اصطحبته الى خارج المنزل، وبينما كان على وشك الصعود على حصانه، توقف، وقال: "دعنا نتصافح" خطى ناحيتي وفجأة طعنني في كتفي بسكين، صرخت، ولكن روبرت هرب بسرعة قبل أن أتمكن من فعل أي شيء.

11. Although my shoulder hurt, I was lucky it was not a bad injury, though I was angry at letting myself fall for such a trick. I was put to bed and told to sleep, which I did for several hours. When I woke up, it was dark and I found Fritz beside me. "The doctor says your arm will soon be better," he said. "And the good news is that your plan has worked, for the girl's brought Johann to the house. He's downstairs right now, and the strange thing is that I think Johann's happy to be here," said Fritz. "He seems to know that if Michael's plan is successful, he'll be in trouble because he knows too much."

على الرغم من أن كتفي كان يؤلمني، كنت محظوظاً أنها لم تكن إصابة سيئة، ولكنني كنت غاضباً انني تركت نفسي أسقط في خدعة من هذا القبيل. حُملت الى السرير وطلبوا مني ان انام، وهو ما قمت به لعدة ساعات. وعندما استيقظت، كان المكان مظلماً ووجدت فريتز بجانبني. فقال: "يقول الطبيب ان ذراعك سيصبح أفضل قريباً، والخبر السار هو أن خطتك بدأت تعمل، فالفتاة قد جلبت جوهان الى المنزل. انه بالطابق السفلي في الوقت الحالي، والغريب في الأمر أنني أعتقد ان جوهان سعيد لوجوده هنا، يبدو انه يعلم انه اذا نجحت خطة مايكل، سوف يكون هو في مأزق لأنه يعرف أشياء أكثر من اللازم."

12. This made me think that Johann would be more useful to us than I had first thought. Surely with the right encouragement, he would make the perfect spy for us? I went downstairs and asked to see Johann. The guards had brought him in with his hands tied behind his back. I sat him down in a chair, where he sat looking sad and afraid. As we talked to him, we understood that Johann was a weak man but not a **wicked** one. He said he worked for Michael because he was afraid of him not because he liked him, and he seemed happy to tell me Michael's secrets.

جعلني هذا أعتقد أن جوهان سيكون أكثر فائدة بالنسبة لنا مما كنت أعتقد في البداية. وبالتأكيد مع الترغيب المناسب، سيكون الجاسوس المثالي بالنسبة لنا؟ ذهبت للطابق السفلي وطلبت أن أرى جوهان. وكان الحراس أتوا به ويدها مكبلتان خلف ظهره. أجلسته على كرسي، حيث جلس وهو يبدو عليه الحزن والخوف. وعندما تحدثنا إليه، فهمنا أن جوهان كان رجلاً ضعيفاً ولكنه ليس شريراً. وقال انه كان يعمل لمايكل لأنه كان يخافه ليس لأنه يحبه، وبدا سعيداً وهو يخبرني أسرار مايكل.

13. He told us that there were two small rooms inside the castle, which you could only reach by crossing the drawbridge. The rooms were cut into the rock below the ground. One room had no windows, so it was always lit by candles. Behind it was a second room with a small window, where the King was kept in chains. From the window, a large stone pipe led down to the castle moat. The first room was always guarded by three of the Six Men. They were told that, if some people attacked the first room and it was in danger of being taken, Detchard should go into the other room and kill the King. The body would then be put down the pipe and the weight of his chains would keep the body under water. Calling out to the other men, Detchard would then escape down the same pipe and swim across the moat. The other two men would then follow him and the Duke's horses would take them to safety. So anyone searching the castle would find nothing: just an empty room.

قال لنا ان هناك غرفتين صغيرتين داخل القلعة، والتي يمكن أن تصلهما فقط عن طريق عبور الجسر المتحرك. وهى غرف منحوتة في الصخر تحت الأرض. واحدة منهما ليس لها نوافذ، لذلك كانت مضاءة دائماً بالشموع. وخلفها كان هناك غرفة ثانية بنافاذة صغيرة، حيث كانوا يحتفظون بالملك مقيداً في سلاسل. ومن النافذة كان هناك ماسورة كبيرة من الحجارة تؤدي الى خندق القلعة. كانت الغرفة الأولى دائماً تخضع لحراسة ثلاثة من الرجال الستة. قيل لهم أنه إذا هاجم بعض الناس الغرفة الأولى وكان هناك خطر ان يتم الاستيلاء عليها، يجب ان يذهب دى تشارد الى الغرفة الأخرى ويقتل الملك. وبعد ذلك يوضع الجسم لينزلق من خلال الماسورة وتقل الأغلال سيبقى الجسم تحت الماء. ثم ينادى على باقى الرجال، ويهرب دى تشارد إلى أسفل الماسورة ويسبح عبر نفس الخندق. ثم يتبعه الرجلين وخيول الدوق سوف تأخذهم إلى بر الأمان. لذلك فإن أي شخص يقوم بتفتيش القلعة لن يجد شيئاً: مجرد غرفة فارغة.

14. "What if many men attacked the castle?" I asked. "They have another plan," he explained. "If the castle's attacked by a large group of soldiers, they would do the same thing, but one of the Six Men would take the King's place. So when Michael arrived at the castle, he could say that he was only keeping one of the Six Men as prisoner because he'd been rude to Antoinette de Mauban. No one would believe that the King was ever there." "It's a very clever plan," said Sapt angrily. "It means that if we attack the castle quietly and secretly, or openly with a great army, the King will still be dead before we can save him. Rassendyll, I think that this time next year, you'll still be King."

سألته: "ماذا لو هاجم العديد من الرجال القلعة؟" فشرح لى: "لديهم خطة أخرى، اذا هوجمت القلعة من قبل مجموعة كبيرة من الجنود، فإنهم سيفعلون الشيء نفسه، ولكن واحد من الست رجال سيحل محل الملك. لذلك عندما يصل مايكل إلى القلعة سيقول انه هو كان فقط متحفظاً على واحد من الست رجال كسجين لأنه كان وقحا مع أنطوانيت دى موبان، و عندها لا يمكن لأحد أن يعتقد أن الملك كان هناك أي وقت مضى" فقال سابت بغضب: "انها خطة ذكية جداً، وهذا يعني أنه إذا هاجمنا القلعة في هدوء وسرية، أو في العلن ومعنا جيش عظيم فإن الملك سيكون ميتاً قبل أن تتمكن من انقاذه، أسمع يا راسندل أعتقد أن في هذا الوقت من العام القادم، سوف تكون لا تزال الملك."

15. My pulse quickened at the thought of remaining King forever. But without proving that Michael had killed the real King, the Duke would still be there, in his castle, waiting for his opportunity to take my place. I would never be safe. "Does the King know about Michael's plan?" I asked Johann. "Yes, and so does my brother, Max. He helped to put up the pipe to the prison window. It's not easy to sleep at the Castle of Zenda because no one feels safe. Everyone in it is a criminal, except the King."

كان نبض قلبي يتسارع عندما افكر اننى سأبقى الملك إلى الأبد، لكن من دون إثبات أن مايكل كان قد قتل الملك الحقيقي، فإن الدوق سيظل هناك في قصره، في انتظار فرصته لاتخاذ مكاني، لن أكون في أمان أبداً" سألت جوهان: "هل يعرف الملك شيئاً عن خطة مايكل؟" فقال: "نعم، وكذلك أخي ماكس فقد ساعد في وضع الماسورة عند نافذة السجن. ليس من السهل ان تنام في قلعة زندا لأنه لا أحد يشعر بالأمان. الجميع هناك مجرمون، باستثناء الملك."

16. "Thank you, Johann," I said to him. "You can go back to the castle now. If anyone asks you if there is a prisoner in the castle, you can say there is. But if anyone asks you who the prisoner is, do not answer. We can help you if you keep your promises, otherwise you'll never be safe again." Johann bowed to me as he left. We hoped he could be trusted. "So, what are we going to do now?" asked Sapt. I thought long and hard. "There are two ways in which the King can come out of Zenda alive," I said. "One is if we have a miracle, and the other is if one of the Duke's men betrays him."

قلت له: "شكراً لك، يا جوهان، يمكنك العودة إلى القلعة الآن. إذا سألك أي شخص لو ان هناك سجين في القلعة، يمكنك أن تقول نعم هناك، ولكن إذا سألك أي شخص من هو السجين فلا تجب، ونحن يمكن أن نساعدك اذا وفيت بوعدك، وإلا فلن تكون في أمان مرة أخرى." انحنى جوهان أمامي وهو يغادر، كنا نأمل ان يصح وثوقنا به، سألتني سابت: "إذاً، ما الذي سنفعله الآن؟" فكرت طويلاً وبجدية ثم قلت: "هناك طريقتان لإخراج الملك من زندا حياً، الاولى هو اذا كان لدينا معجزة، والأخرى هي اذا كان أحد الرجال الدوق على استعداد ان يخونه."

Answer The Following Questions

A) Choose the correct answer :

1. What happened when Rupert was leaving Tarlenheim?

- he stabbed Rassendyll in the shoulder with a sword.
- he stabbed Rassendyll in the hand with a knife.
- he stabbed Rassendyll in the shoulder with a knife.
- he stabbed Rassendyll in the leg with a knife.

2. What did Sapt and Rassendyll learn from Johann?

- where the King was in the hunting lodge and the Duke's plans
- where the Duke was and the king's plans
- where Rassendyll was
- where the King was kept in the castle and the Duke's plans

3. What was Michael's plan if the castle was attacked?

- a) They would kidnap the king and put him in the cellar
- b) They would kill the King and put him into the pipe
- c) They would poison the king and put him in the second room
- d) They would chain the king and leave him in the cellar

4. Why did Rassendyll decide to send Johann back to the castle?

- a) to get more information from him
- b) to kill Michael
- c) to get rid of him
- d) to make him kill Rupert

5. What would Michael's men do with the body of the king?

- a) The chains would keep the body under the water of the mansion
- b) The chains would keep the body under the water of the castle
- c) The chains would keep the body under the walls of the castle
- d) The chains would keep the body under the water of the moat

6. Why would Johann be in trouble if Michael's plan succeeded?

- a) Rassendyll would ask him to work as a spy
- b) Sapt and Rassendyll would try to kill him
- c) Michael would know he was Rassendyll's spy
- d) He knew too much about Michael's plans

7. How could Johann be very useful to Rassendyll?

- a) He knew how to save the King
- b) Johann was a friend of the innkeeper
- c) He would make the perfect spy for Rassendyll
- d) He knew Rassendyll wasn't the real King

8. According to Johann, why did he work for Michael?

- a) To save the King
- b) He liked him
- c) To get money
- d) He was afraid of him

9. Where was the King kept at the Castle of Zenda?

- a) on the drawbridge
- b) in a room next to the castle moat
- c) in a tower
- d) in a country house

10. The window of the room where the King was kept has a large pipe that leads to the

- a) castle moat
- b) drawbridge
- c) mansion
- d) inn

11. If some men attacked the Castle, Detchard would kill the King and

- a) say it was Michael that killed him
- b) the body would be left in the room
- c) say it was Bersonin that killed him
- d) the body would be put down the pipe

12. How did Michael plan to hide the King's body?

- a) The chains would keep the body under the water of the moat
- b) The guards would swim across the moat to escape.
- c) They would hide the body in the mansion
- d) They would burn the body

13. Even if Rassendyll remained King forever, he'd never be safe. Explain.

- a) Michael would try to marry Flavia
- b) The poor people hated him
- c) Michael would be waiting for his opportunity to take the crown
- d) Michael would prove that he wasn't the real king

14. Who else knew about Michael's plan to kill the King?

- a) Max Holf
- b) the innkeeper
- c) the innkeeper's daughter
- d) Flavia

15. What was Max Holf's role in Michael's plan to kill the King?

- a) He helped to chain the King
- b) He helped to put the pipe to the window
- c) He helped hide the King's body
- d) He helped the guard to escape

16. According to Rassendyll, the King could come out of Zenda alive if there was a miracle or.....

- a) one of the Duke's men betrayed him
- b) Duke Michael knew he was mistaken
- c) a great army attacked the castle
- d) the King was brave

17. What was Ditchard's role if some men attacked the first room?

- a) He would kill them
- b) He would be tied instead of the king
- c) He would kill the king
- d) He would report Michael

18. What was the pipe made of?

- a) stone
- b) iron
- c) brass
- d) plastic

19. Who would kill the king if the castle was attacked?

- a) Rupert
- b) De Gautet
- c) Detchard
- d) Michael

20. Did the king know about Michael's plan?

- a) Yes, he did
- b) I don't know
- c) No he didn't
- d) He didn't understand

21. Why couldn't the king's body float if it was thrown into the moat?

- a) he was heavy
- b) due to the chains
- c) the moat was deep
- d) It was tied

22. How could the king be rescued?

- a) By a magic
- b) By a fight
- c) By a miracle or betrayal
- d) By malice

23. Why was it impossible to get the king out of the castle alive?

- a) Michael would take the king to another place if the castle was attacked
- b) Michael would kill anyone trying to attack the castle
- c) Michael would kill the king if the castle was attacked
- d) Michael would kill himself if the castle was attacked

B) Answer the following questions:

- 1- Sapt said that Rupert was the worst criminal of Michael's men. How do you think this came true?
- 2- Rupert Hentzau was treacherous غدار and trustless. Explain.
- 3- How do you think Rassendyll was lucky when Rupert stabbed him?
- 4- Although his shoulder hurt, Rassendyll was lucky after being stabbed. Explain.
- 5- Johann worked for the Duke unwillingly. How do you know that?
- 6- In your opinion, what made Johann afraid of Michael?
- 7- Why do you think Johann was happy when he went to meet Rassendyll in the country house?
- 8- How far do you think Johann could be of great benefit to Rassendyll?
- 9- Why do you think a pipe was put up on the window of the King's room?
- 10- The pipe had many uses for Michael's men. Discuss.
- 11- Why do you think one of the six men would take the king's place?
- 12- Why was the first room always guarded by three of the six men?
- 13- Michael prepared clever plans if the castle was attacked. What do you think of these plans?
- 14- Why do you think it would be impossible to save the King?
- 15- Do you think that Rassendyll could have been king forever? Why?
- 16- Why do you think Rassendyll asked Johann not to tell anyone who the prisoner was?
- 17- Why do you think Johann called everyone in the castle as a criminal?
- 18- Why do you think Rassendyll and Sapt became very worried after meeting Johann?
- 19- What do you think Rassendyll might have done if Johann had refused to work as a spy?
- 20- If you were Rassendyll, What would you think of to save the King?
- 21- Why do you think Rassendyll's pulse quickened at the thought of remaining king forever?
- 22- Why do you think it wasn't easy to sleep at the Castle of Zenda?
- 23- Why do you think Rassendyll wanted Johann to go back to the castle of Zenda?
- 24- According to Rassendyll how could the king come out of Zenda alive?

Chapter: 7

Part 1

Students Book Text

1. The next day, three pieces of news arrived at the Tarlenheim country house where we were staying. The first was that people of Strelsau had heard I was badly injured while I was hunting in the woods, and they were worried. Secondly, the Duke also thought I was badly injured, although he understood better how I had got my injury. I heard this from Johann, who I now trusted and had allowed to go back to Zenda. Thirdly, Marshal Strakencz told me that Princess Flavia had ordered him to take her to see me.

في اليوم التالي، وصل ثلاثة اخبار الى المنزل الريفي تارلينهيم حيث كنا نقيم، كان الأول أن الناس في سترلسو قد سمعوا اننى أصبت أصابة شديدة بينما كنت أصطاد في الغابة، وانهم يشعرون بالقلق، وكان الثاني أن الدوق أيضا أعتقد اننى أصبت بجروح خطيرة، على الرغم من أنه يفهم بشكل كبير كيف حدثت لي هذه الإصابة، سمعت هذا من جوهان، الذي أثق فيه الآن، ولذلك سمحت له أن يعود الى زندا، أما الثالث فقد أخبرنى المارشال ستراكنتش أن الأميرة فلافيا قد أمرته أن يأتى بها لرؤيتي.

2. When the Princess arrived at Tarlenheim, she was relieved to see that my injury was not serious. However, Johann told us shortly afterwards that the King was looking weak and ill, and we realised that we had to do something quickly. We could not wait any longer or he would surely die. It was perhaps the strangest thing in the history of any country that the King's brother and a pretend King, near a quiet country town during a time of peace, acted out a war for the life of a sick King, with just a few people knowing about it.

عندما وصلت الأميرة الى تارلينهيم، شعرت بالارتياح عندما رأت أن إصابتي لم تكن خطيرة. ولكن جوهان أخبرنا، بعد ذلك بقليل، أن الملك يبدو ضعيفا ومريضا، وادركنا أنه علينا أن نفعل شيئا بسرعة. فنحن لا يمكن أن ننتظر أطول من ذلك وإلا فمن المؤكد أنه سيموت. وربما كان أغرب شيء في تاريخ أي بلد، أن شقيق الملك وشخص يتظاهر أنه الملك، بالقرب من بلدة ريفية هادئة خلال وقت السلم، يخططون لحرب من أجل حياة ملك مريض، مع عدد قليل من الناس يعرفون هذا الأمر.

3. That night, after Princess Flavia had gone to bed, I changed my clothes and went outside to join Sapt and Fritz with seven men. We all had weapons and we rode our horses into a wet, windy night, taking a quiet back road towards the Castle of Zenda. It took us about an hour to get there. A few hundred metres from the castle, we asked the seven men to wait with the horses while we continued on foot up the hill to the moat around the castle. Here, Sapt tied a rope to a tree and I took off my boots, using the rope to climb down into the water.

في تلك الليلة، بعدما ذهبت الأميرة فلافيا الى النوم، بدلت ملابسى، وذهبت إلى الخارج للانضمام إلى ثابت وفريترز مع سبعة رجال. وكنا جميعاً مسلحين، تحركنا بخيولنا في ليلة رطبة وعاصفة، أخذنا طريق خلفى هادئ متجهاً نحو قلعة زيندا، استغرق الأمر منا حوالي ساعة

للوصول إلى هناك. وعلى بعد بضع مئات من الأمتار من القلعة، طلبنا من الرجال السبعة الانتظار مع الخيول بينما واصلنا سيرنا على الأقدام من أعلى التل إلى الخندق المائي حول القلعة. هنا، ربطت حبل في شجرة، وخلعت حذائي لاستخدام الحبل للنزول إلى أسفل في الماء.

4. Although the night was windy and wet, it had been a warm and sunny day and the water was not cold, and I swam without difficulty round the castle walls. I could hear voices inside the castle, but it was so dark that I did not think anyone could see me. I remembered what Johann had told me and thought I must now be near to the window to the King's room. Then, I saw the giant pipe that led from his window to the moat, and I was about to go nearer when I heard a noise.

على الرغم من أن الليل كان عاصف ورطب، فقد كان يوماً حاراً ومشمساً لذلك لم يكن الماء بارداً، وسبحت دون صعوبة حول جدران القلعة. كنت أسمع أصواتاً داخل القلعة، ولكن كان المكان مظلماً لذلك لا أعتقد أن أي شخص كان في استطاعته أن يراني. تذكرت ما أخبرني به جوهان واعتقدت أنه من المؤكد أنني الآن بالقرب من نافذة الغرفة التي بها الملك. ثم، رأيت الماسورة العملاقة التي كانت تصل نافذة غرفته بالخندق، وكنت على وشك الإقتراب أكثر عندما سمعت ضوضاء.

5. I now saw there was a boat next to the pipe, and in the boat was a guard carrying a large gun. I went up to the boat as quietly as I could, then I saw that the guard was Max Holf, the brother of Johann. He was breathing slowly and deeply and I saw that he was asleep. I swam slowly and silently up to him and, though I hated to do it, this was war, so I stabbed him to death.

الآن رأيت أن هناك قارب بجوار الماسورة، وفي القارب كان هناك حارس يحمل بندقية كبيرة. ذهبت إلى القارب بهدوء ما أمكنتني، ثم رأيت أن الحارس كان ماكس هولف، شقيق جوهان. أنه كان يتنفس ببطء وعمق، وفهمت أنه كان نائماً. سبحت ببطء وفي صمت حتى وصلت عنده، وعلى الرغم من كراهيتي للقيام بذلك، لقد كانت هذه حرب، لذلك طعنته حتى الموت.

6. Now I had time to look carefully at the pipe. I soon realised that the bottom of the pipe was not fastened to the wall and I could see light coming from its far end. I tried to push it, and although the pipe was very heavy, it moved just a little. Then I heard voices: one was the King, and the other was a man with an English accent. It was Detchard. "Time for your sleep." said the Englishman. "Why doesn't my brother kill me now?" said the King in a weak voice. "The Duke doesn't want you to die, not yet anyway. Sleep well!" said Detchard. Then the light disappeared and I could hear a door being locked. Now all I could hear was the King, quietly crying.

الآن لدى الوقت لفحص الماسورة بعناية. سرعان ما أدركت أن الجزء السفلي من الماسورة لم يكن مثبتاً في الجدار، واستطعت أن أرى ضوءاً قادماً من طرفها البعيد. حاولت أن ادفعها، وعلى الرغم من أن الماسورة كانت ثقيلة جداً، فقد تحركت قليلاً فقط. ثم سمعت صوتان: كان أحدهما الملك، والآخر كان رجلاً بلهجة إنجليزية. إنه ديتشارد. قال الإنجليزي: "حان وقت نومك". وقال الملك بصوت ضعيف: "لماذا لا يقتلني أخي الآن؟". فقال ديتشارد: "الدوق لا يريدك أن تموت، ليس بعد على أي حال. نم بشكل جيد!". ثم اختفى الضوء وسمعت صوت باب يُقفل. الآن كل ما يمكن أن أسمعته كان الملك، يبكي بصوت منخفض.

7. I realised nothing more could be done that night, so I climbed in the boat with Max dead at the bottom and rowed back to the rope. The wind was blowing hard now, so I did not worry that anyone would hear the boat. When I arrived next to the rope, I tied it round Max's body and asked Sapt to pull it up. Then I climbed back to my friends. Sapt **whistled** for our seven men to come and get us with their horses, but as they got nearer, we heard several shots and loud cries, and then a voice call out, "They've got me, Rupert! There are seven of them. Save yourself!"

أدركت أنه لا يمكنني فعل أى شئ آخر في تلك الليلة، لذلك قفزت في القارب مع ماكس وكان ميتاً فوضعتة في الجزء السفلي، وجدفت عائداً مرة أخرى إلى الحبل. كانت الرياح تهب بشدة الآن، حتى أنني لم أقلق من أن أي شخص قد يسمع القارب. عندما وصلت إلى جوار الحبل، ربطته حول جسم ماكس، وطلبت من ثابت أن يسحب القارب لأعلى. ثم تركته عائداً مرة أخرى إلى أصدقائي. قام ثابت بالصفير لرجالنا السبعة ليأتوا ويأخذوننا بخيولهم، ولكن عندما اقتربوا منا سمعنا عدة طلقات وصرخات عالية، وبعد ذلك صاح صوت: "لقد اصابوني يا روبرت! وهناك سبعة منهم. أنقذ نفسك!"

8. We were running towards our men when a horse arrived with Rupert Hentzau on it. It was so dark that he did not see us, so I took a large stick and ran forward towards the horse's head. Now, surely we had him! But he was too quick. He waved a sword at me and cut my stick in half. I stepped back, and before we knew it, he had disappeared into the night. I later found out that Lauengram and Krafstein were both killed by our men, although the fight had cost us three of our own men. We went home with heavy hearts for our friends, worried about the health of the King, and angry that Rupert had escaped.

كنا نجرى نحو رجالنا عندما وصل حصان عليه روبرت هينتزو. وكان المكان مظلماً حتى أنه لم يرانا، فأخذت عصا كبيرة، وركضت إلى الأمام نحو رأس الحصان. الآن، كان من المؤكد أننا تمكنا منه! ولكنه كان سريعاً جداً. فقد لوح بسيفه في وجهي، وقطع عصاي نصفين. أخذت خطوة إلى الوراء، وقبل ان نعرف ما يحدث، كان قد اختفى في الظلام. اكتشفت فيما بعد أن لوينجرام وكرافستين كلاهما قد قُتل بواسطة رجالنا، على الرغم من أن هذه المعركة قد كلفتنا ثلاثة من رجالنا. ذهبنا الى المنزل بقلوب موجوعة بسبب اصدقائنا، يساورنا القلق بشأن صحة الملك، وغاضبين من أن روبرت قد هرب.

9. The next day, I received a visit from the Chief of Police in Strelsau. He told me that the British Ambassador had reported that an Englishman called Rassendyll had disappeared near the town of Zenda. They had found his bags at a nearby train station, and a man called Mr Featherly from Paris believed he was travelling with Madame de Mauban. He asked if I knew the lady. "Yes, I do." I replied. "I believe she and her servants were guests of Duke Michael." "I see." said the policeman. "Go back to Strelsau and tell the Ambassador what you know. I'll look into this for you." I told him. "Return in two weeks and I'll tell you what I've found." I wanted to have at least two weeks without any more difficult questions. My game had almost been discovered.

وفي اليوم التالي تلقيت زيارة من "رئيس الشرطة" في ستريلسو. واخبرني أن "السفير البريطاني" أبلغه أن رجلاً إنجليزياً يدعى راسينديل قد اختفى قرب مدينة زيندا. وقد وجدوا أمتعته في محطة قطار قريبة، وأدعى رجل يدعى السيد فيزيرلي من باريس أنه كان مسافراً مع مدام دي موبان. وسأل إذا كنت أعرف السيدة. فأجبته: "نعم، أعرفها. أعتقد أنها وخدمها كانوا ضيوفاً عند الدوق مايكل". فقال الشرطي: "أفهم ذلك". فقلت له: "عليك ان تعود إلى ستريلسو وتخبر السفير بما تعرفه. سوف ننظر في هذا من اجلك". "سنعود في غضون أسبوعين، وسوف أخبركم ما قد وجدت". أردت أن يكون امامى على الأقل أسبوعين دون أي أسئلة أكثر صعوبة. تقريباً قد أكتشفت لعبتي.

Answer The Following Questions

A) Choose the correct answer :

1- The people of Strelsau heard that the King was badly injured while

- a) hunting in the woods
b) fighting Detchard
c) trying to rescue the king
d) climbing into the moat

2- Why did the Princess ordered the Marshall to take her to Tarlenheim?

- a) to save the King
b) to see the King (Rassendyll)
c) to make sure the King was injured
d) to get the King back to Strelsau

3- Princess Flavia was to see that the king's injury wasn't serious.

- a) worried b) furious c) relieved d) anxious

4- Why did Rassendyll and the others have to do something quickly?

- a) If they waited, the King would be injured
b) The King was looking weak and ill
c) If they waited, the King would be saved
d) The doctor cared for the King

5- Why did Sapt and Fritz with seven men go with Rassendyll to the Castle?

- a) so that they could rescue the King
b) so that they could make plans to rescue the King
c) so that Rassendyll could kill Max Holf
d) so that they could remove the pipe

6- Where did Rassendyll ask the seven men to wait?

- a) at about a few hundred metres from the palace
b) at about a few thousand metres from the castle
c) at about a few hundred metres from the inn
d) at about a few hundred metres from the castle

7- How did Rassendyll go down to the (moat) without being seen?

- a) He used a rope to climb down into the water
b) He jumped quickly into the water
c) He used steps to climb down into the water
d) He hid his men behind some trees

8- Rassendyll saw a boat next to the pipe, and in the boat there was

- a) a fisherman catching fish
- b) Sapt waiting to take him to safety
- c) a guard carrying a large gun
- d) the seven men climbing up the pipe

9- How did Max Holf, the brother of Johann, meet his end?

- a) Rassendyll shot him in the head
- b) He drowned in the moat
- c) He committed suicide
- d) Rassendyll stabbed him to death

10- Why did Rassendyll kill Max Holf?

- a) It was war for the King's life
- b) He was guarding the castle
- c) He was trying to kill Rassendyll
- d) Max was working for Sapt

11- Who does Rassendyll hear talking when he swims round the castle moat?

- a) the Duke and Johann
- b) the King and Detchard
- c) Rupert and the King
- d) Max and Johann

12- Rassendyll managed to listen to the King inside the Castle when

- a) He went to his room.
- b) He hid in the castle.
- c) He pretended to be Johann.
- d) He listened from the moat.

13- What did Rassendyll realise when he looked at the pipe?

- a) Its bottom was very narrow
- b) He could see light from its far end
- c) He could see the King in his prison
- d) He could see the King was asleep

14- What did Rassendyll hear when the light disappeared and a door locked?

- a) The King was escaping through the pipe
- b) The King was quietly talking to Detchard
- c) The King was quietly sleeping
- d) The King was quietly crying

15- Why would no one hear the boat when Rassendyll rowed back to the rope?

- a) The wind was blowing hard
- b) He was rowing quietly and slowly
- c) Everyone was fast asleep
- d) People in the castle were having a ball

16- Why did Rassendyll and the men return home with heavy hearts?

- a) Three of their men were injured
- b) They were worried about the Duke
- c) Two of the six men were killed
- d) Three of their men were killed

17- Why did the Chief of Police visit Rassendyll in Tarlenheim?

- a) To help him search for the king
- b) To help him search for the bags
- c) To ask him about de Mauban
- d) To ask his help against Michael

18- Where did they find Rassendyll's bags?

- a) near the hunting lodge
- b) near the capital of Ruritania
- c) in an inn in Zenda
- d) near the town of Zenda

19- Rassendyll never went to the station to get his bags because

- a) He forgot them
- b) He met the King in the woods
- c) He was pretending to be the King
- d) They were of no value

20- Why was the Chief of Police looking for Mr Rassendyll?

- a) Rassendyll was pretending to be the King
- b) Rassendyll had left Strelsau without permission
- c) Rassendyll wanted to fight Duke Michael
- d) The British ambassador reported Rassendyll missing

21- Rassendyll asked the Chief of Police to return in two weeks to.....

- a) tell him what he had found.
- b) tell him what Sapt had found
- c) tell him where Rassendyll was
- d) tell him where the real king was

B) Answer the following questions:

- 1- Do you think the people of Ruritania were interested in the news of the King's injury? Why?
- 2- Why do you think Michael understood better how Rassendyll got his injury?
- 3- Why do you think the princess was relieved when she arrived at Tarlenheim?
- 4-Prove that Flavia cared too much for the king's life.
- 5- What do you think the strangest thing in the history of Ruritania was?
- 6- In your opinion, why was it necessary to do something quickly to save the King?
- 7- What do you think made Rassendyll swim around the castle?
- 8- If you were Rassendyll, would you get near the King's prison? Why?
- 9- How do you think Rassendyll was lucky when he saw the boat near the pipe?
- 10- Why do you think Max Holf was in a boat in the moat at night?
- 11- What do you think made Rassendyll unwillingly stab Max Holf to death?
- 12- How do you think Rassendyll benefited from killing Max Holf?
- 13- Why do you think Rupert managed to escape from them?
- 14- Do you think that Rupert had quick thinking? How do you know?
- 15- Show that the king was in despair in his imprisonment.
- 16- If you were the king, would you lose hope and ask to be killed? Why?
- 17-The seven men were loyal and brave. Illustrate.
- 18- Why do you think Rassendyll and his men were extremely sad on their way back from the castle to Tarlenheim?
- 19-The murder of the three men wasn't the only sorrow for Rassendyll.Explain.
- 20- How do you think Rassendyll's real identity was about to be revealed?
- 21- Why do you think Rassendyll ask the Police Chief to return in two weeks?
- 22- How do you think Rassendyll was in a tight corner?
- 23- How do you think Rassendyll felt after the visit of the Chief of the Police?

Chapter: 7

Part 2

Students Book Text

10. But, with the policeman in town that day, there could be no more fighting around the castle, and Rupert clearly felt safe enough to ride out on his horse. When I saw him, I quickly caught up with him. He looked surprised to see me. "How's my brother today?" I asked him. "He's well." he replied. "He hopes he'll soon be in Strelsau." "Rupert, you're young. Why are you doing this? If you let your prisoner go free, I can help you." I said to him. "You don't have to work for my brother." Rupert looked ahead of him and said nothing for a minute, then he spoke quietly.

لكن، مع وجود الشرطي في المدينة في ذلك اليوم، لا يمكن أن يكون هناك قتال مرة أخرى حول القلعة، وشعر روبرت بوضوح أنه في أمان بما يكفي للخروج ركباً على جواده. عندما رأيته، لحقته بسرعة. كان يبدو مندهشاً لرؤيتي. سألته: "كيف حال أخي اليوم؟". فأجاب: "هو بخير، كما أنه يأمل أن يكون قريباً في ستريلسو". قلت له: "روبرت، أنت مازلت شاباً. لماذا تفعل هذا؟ إذا تركت السجين حراً، يمكنني أن أساعدك، لم تكن مضطراً للعمل من أجل شقيقي". نظر روبرت أمامه، ولم يقل شيئاً لمدة دقيقة، ثم تكلم بهدوء.

11. "You may be right. Attack the castle bravely. I'll tell you when. But Fritz and Sapt must die, and so must Michael and the King. That will leave two men alive: you and me. You'll stay as the King, and I'll have a reward." "Would you really work against Michael?" I asked him. "He's not a good man." he replied. "He makes me angry. I nearly killed him myself last night. Think carefully about my plan." With that, he rode off down the road.

"قد تكون على حق. هاجم القلعة بشجاعة. سأقول لك متى. ولكن يجب أن يموت فريتز وثابت، وكذلك يجب أن يموت مايكل والملك. وهذا سوف يترك رجلان على قيد الحياة: أنت وأنا. ستبقى أنت كملك، وسأخذ أنا المكافأة" سألته: "هل حقاً ستعمل ضد مايكل؟". فأجاب: "انه ليس رجل جيد، أنه يجعلني غاضباً. وكنت على وشك قتله بنفسي الليلة الماضية. فكر بعناية في خطتي". وبعد ذلك، انطلق بحصانه في طريقه.

12. Later that day, Sapt could see that I was deep in thought, but I did not tell him what I was thinking. There was a knock at the door and a boy brought me a message. It read: Johann will take this letter for me. I warned you before. The Duke discovered that I helped you that night in the summer house. He is now keeping me a prisoner in his mansion because he cannot trust me. Please, if you can, rescue me from this house of murderers. Antoinette de Mauban

في وقت لاحق من ذلك اليوم، لاحظ ثابت انني كنت مستغرقاً في الفكر، ولكنني لم أخبره فيما كنت افكر. كان هناك طرقةً على الباب، إنه صبي يحمل رسالة لي. كانت الرسالة تقول: يوهان سوف يأخذ هذه الرسالة من اجلي. لقد حذرتك من قبل. اكتشف الدوق أنني قد ساعدتك في تلك الليلة في المنزل الصيفي. وهو الآن يتحفظ علي كسجين في قصره نظراً لأنه لا يمكنه الوثوق بي. من فضلك، إذا كنت تستطيع، انقذني من بيت القتل هذا. أنطوانيت دو موبان

13. What could I do? Time went on and I knew that, for now, I could do nothing to help either Madame de Mauban or the King. I soon heard that the people in Strelsau did not like the fact that I had been away from them for so long. To keep them happy, my messengers told them that Flavia and I had arranged a date for our wedding, news which was greeted with great joy.

ماذا يمكن أن أفعل؟ مضى الوقت وكنت أعلم أنه، الآن، لا يمكنني أن أفعل شيئاً لمساعدة مدام دي موبان أو الملك. وسرعان ما سمعت أن الناس في ستريلسو لم يقبلوا حقيقة بعدى عنهم لفترة طويلة. وللحفاظ على سعادتهم، أخبرهم رُسلى أنى و فلافيا قد رتبنا موعد زفافنا، وهو الخبر الذي قوبل بفرح عظيم.

14. Not everyone wanted to know this news, however. Johann told me that the Duke was furious to hear about the wedding. At the same time, the King had become so ill that the Duke had asked for a doctor to examine him. The doctor advised him to set the King free at once, but the Duke refused, adding that the doctor would have to stay with him until he was better or died, whichever came first. Johann also told us that Antoinette de Mauban was helping to look after the King, who was guarded by two of the remaining Six Men at all times.

ومع ذلك ليس الجميع كان يريد أن يعرف هذه الأخبار، أخبرنى جوهان أن الدوق كان غاضباً عندما سمع عن حفل الزفاف. وفي الوقت نفسه، أصبح الملك مريضاً جداً حتى أن الدوق طلب طبيباً لفحصه. نصحه الطبيب بأن يحرر الملك فى الحال، ولكن الدوق رفض، مضيفاً أن الطبيب سيضطر ان يبقى معه حتى يتحسن او يموت، أيهما يأتي أولاً. اخبرنى جوهان أيضا أن أنطوانيت دو موبان تساعد فى العناية بالملك، الذي كان يحرسه اثنان ممن تبقى من "الرجال الستة" في جميع الأوقات.

15. Although Johann did not want to return to the castle, we paid him well to go back and act as our spy. I found out from Johann where all the people stayed at night in the castle and the mansion, and who had the keys to the doors. "I'll give you fifty thousand pieces of gold if you do what I ask you tomorrow night." I told Johann. "I hear there are new servants at the castle. Do these servants know the King's a prisoner there?" "No, they don't know who the prisoner is." he answered. "So if they saw me, they'd think that I was the King?" I asked. "Yes, they would, sir." "Good. Tomorrow night, give this letter to Antoinette de Mauban. Then, at two o'clock in the morning, open the front door to the mansion. Ask no more questions. Now go."

على الرغم من أن جوهان لا يريد العودة إلى القلعة، دفعنا له جيداً لكي يعود ويتصرف كجاسوس لنا. اكتشفت من جوهان أماكن إقامة جميع الناس اثناء الليل في القلعة والقصر، ومن لديه مفاتيح الأبواب. قلت لجوهان: "سأعطيك خمسين ألف قطعة من الذهب إذا فعلت ما أطلب منك ليلة الغد، سمعت أن هناك خدم جدد في القلعة. هل يعرف هؤلاء الخدم ان الملك سجين هناك؟" فأجاب: "لا، لا يعرفون من هو السجين". سألته: "إذاً لو رأونى، لظنوا اننى الملك؟". "نعم، سوف يظنون ذلك يا سيدي." "جيد، ليلة الغد أعطي هذه الرسالة إلى أنطوانيت دو موبان، ثم، في الثانية صباحاً، أفتح الباب الأمامي للقصر، ولا تطرح مزيد من الأسئلة، اذهب الآن".

16. When he was gone, I told Sapt and Fritz about my plan. It was our only chance to save the King. Sapt would take some men to the front door of the

mansion. When Johann opened the door, they would quickly enter and tie up the servants if they did not want to help the King. At the same time Madame de Mauban would cry out for help from her room. The Duke would surely come to see what was happening, and we could take him. Then there would only be two men left guarding the King, so we would need to move quickly before they hurt him.

عندما سمحت له بالانصراف، اخبرت ثابت وفريتز عن خطتي، أنها فرصتنا الوحيدة لإنقاذ الملك، سيأخذ ثابت بعض الرجال إلى الباب الأمامي للقصر، عندما يفتح جوهان الباب، سيدخلون بسرعة ويربطون الخدم إذا لم يريدوا مساعدة الملك، وفي الوقت نفسه سوف تصرخ مدام دي موبان من غرفتها للحصول على مساعدة، سيأتي الدوق بالتأكيد لمعرفة ما يحدث، وعندها يمكننا أن نأخذه، ومن ثم لن يبقى هناك سوى رجلان في حراسة الملك، وعندها علينا أن نتحرك بسرعة قبل أن يؤذوه.

17. Meanwhile, the house at Tarlenheim was to be filled with lights and music so that people believed we were having a ball. Marshal Strakencz would guard the house and the Princess and if, the next day, we had not returned, he would then march to the castle and ask to see the King at once. If the King was not there, he would quickly take Princess Flavia back to the capital where she would become Queen.

وفي الوقت نفسه، يجب ان يُملأ المنزل في تارلينهيم بالأضواء والموسيقى لكي يعتقد الناس أن هناك حفلة. سيقوم المارشال ستراكينكز بحراسة المنزل والأميرة وإذا لم نعود، في اليوم التالي، سوف يسير بالجيش إلى القلعة ويطلب ان يرى الملك في الحال. وإذا لم يكن الملك هناك، فعليه أن يعود سريعاً بالأميرة فلافيا إلى العاصمة حيث ستصبح ملكة.

18. So, that night, at midnight, Sapt took his men to the mansion. I rode alone a different way to the castle, with clothes to keep me warm, weapons and a rope. Half an hour later, I was back by the moat. I left my horse and gun in some trees, tied some rope to another tree and climbed down into the water once more. I swam back to the pipe below the window, but now the pipe was fastened to the wall and no light showed. I looked up at the mansion and saw that the lights were on in the windows to the Duke's and Madame de Mauban's rooms.

لذا، تلك الليلة، في منتصف الليل، أخذ ثابت رجاله إلى القصر. انطلقت وحدي في طريق مختلف للقلعة، مرتدياً ملابس تبقيني دافئاً، ومعى أسلحة وحبلى. وبعد نصف ساعة عدت الى جوار الخندق. تركت حصاني وبنديقتي بين بعض الأشجار، وربط بعض الحبل في شجرة أخرى، وقفزت في الماء مرة أخرى. سبحت مرة أخرى إلى الماسورة أسفل النافذة، ولكن الآن تم تثبيت الماسورة على الجدار ولم يظهر أي ضوء. نظرت إلى القصر ورأيت أن الأضواء كانت مضاءة في نوافذ غرفتي الدوق ومامد دي موبان.

19. Then, I heard voices and I saw Rupert walk towards the castle onto the drawbridge with De Gautet. "Let's go across before they lift the drawbridge for the night." Rupert said. They walked across and shortly after, the bridge went up. A few minutes later, Rupert returned alone. He looked around him and then quietly climbed down some hidden steps to the moat and swam across. Then he climbed

some steps opposite and disappeared back into the mansion. What was he doing? It seemed that I was not the only one who had a plan for that dark, warm night.

ثم، سمعت أصواتاً ورأيت روبرت يسير نحو القلعة على الجسر المتحرك مع دي جوتيت. وقال روبرت: "دعنا نعبر قبل أن ترفعوا الجسر المتحرك لهذه الليلة". عبروا الجسر، وبعد فترة وجيزة، رُفِعَ الجسر. وبعد بضع دقائق عاد روبرت وحده. نظر حوله ثم بهدوء نزل على بعض السلالم الخفية إلى الخندق وسبح عبره. ثم تسلق بعض السلالم المقابلة واختفى مرة أخرى داخل القصر. ماذا كان يفعل؟ يبدو أنني لم أكن الوحيد الذي لديه خطة لتلك الليلة المظلمة الدافئة.

Answer The Following Questions

A) Choose the correct answer :

1- Why did Rupert feel safe enough to ride out on his horse?

- a) Rassendyll was with his brave men
- b) Rassendyll knew there could be no more fighting
- c) The Chief of Police was at Zenda
- d) The Chief of Police was searching for the King

2- When Rassendyll met Rupert near the castle, he asked him to

- a) Help him get rid of Duke Michael
- b) Work for him as a spy
- c) Let the king go free and work for Michael
- d) Let the king go free and stop working for Michael

3- According to Rassendyll, Why shouldn't Rupert work for Michael?

- a- As Rupert was young and didn't need to work for Michael
- b- As Rupert was old and didn't need to work for Michael
- c- As Rupert was weak and didn't need to work for Michael
- d- As Rupert was cowardly and didn't need to work for Michael

4- Rupert offered to help Rassendyll attack the castle, but

- a) Sapt, Michael and the King had to die
- b) Sapt, Fritz, Michael and the King had to die
- c) Sapt, Fritz, and Michael had to die
- d) Sapt, Fritz, Michael had to leave Zenda

5- Why did Rupert suggest killing the king, Michael, Sapt and Fritz?

- a- To have only two men alive: He and Rassendyll.
- b- Rassendyll would stay king and Rupert would have a reward.
- c- Rassendyll would stay king and Rupert would be duke.
- d- Both a and b are correct.

6- What did Rupert Hentzau think of Michael?

- a) Michael was a good man
- b) Michael made him sad
- c) Michael was not a good man
- d) Michael was not a weak man

7- Why was Antoinette de Mauban being kept as a prisoner by the Duke?

- a) She worked as a spy for Rassendyll
- b) She helped Rassendyll and he could not trust her
- c) She warned Flavia against him
- d) She helped free the king

8- Why did Antoinette de Mauban send a message to Rassendyll with a boy?

- a) To warn him not to come near the mansion
- b) To keep her a prisoner
- c) To attack the mansion to rescue the King
- d) to ask him to rescue her

9- When Michael heard that Rassendyll arranged a date for the wedding,

- a) He was very furious
- b) He congratulated them
- c) He was delighted
- d) He wished them a happy life

10- What was the doctor's advice for the Duke concerning the King?

- a) To set the King free at once
- b) To send the King to hospital
- c) To buy him some medicine
- d) To treat him well

11- Why didn't Duke Michael let the doctor who examined the king leave?

- a) He failed to treat the King
- b) He refused to treat the king
- c) He asked for his fees
- d) He'd tell people that the King was a prisoner

12- Who was helping the doctor to look after the king at the castle?

- a) Detchard
- b) Antoinette de Mauban
- c) Duke Michael
- d) Flavia

13- Why did Rassendyll and his men pay Johann well?

- a) To go back to the inn and act as their spy
- b) To kill Duke Michael and his man
- c) To go back to the castle and act as their spy
- d) To go back to the castle and act as their servant

14- Johann told Rassendyll where all the people stayed at night in the castle and the mansion, and who

- a) had the keys to the doors
- b) could save the King
- c) could act as their spy
- d) could treat the King

15- Rassendyll asked Johann to open the front door to the mansion at 2 o'clock in the morning and

- a) try to save the King
- b) give a lot of money to the doctor
- c) give a letter to Antoinette de Mauban
- d) prevent Detchard from killing the King

16- The servants at the castle didn't know who the prisoner was, so if they saw Rassendyll,

- a) they'd think he was the pretend King
- b) they'd think that he was the King
- c) they'd allow him to save the King
- d) they'd help him fight the King

17- Rassendyll asked Antoinette de Mauban to cry out for help at two o'clock in the morning so that

- a) the Duke would go to help her
- b) Robert would open the front door
- c) Detchard couldn't kill the doctor
- d) Sapt and Fritz could cross the moat

18- The house at Tarlenheim was to be filled with lights and music so that people would believe

- a) Rassendyll and his men went to save the King
- b) Rassendyll and his men were having a ball
- c) Rassendyll and his men were at the castle
- d) Rassendyll and his men returned to Strelsau

B) Answer the following questions:

- 1- Do you think that Rupert would really work against Michael? Why / Why not?
- 2- Why do you think Rupert thought Michael was a bad man?
- 3- Rupert suggested a plan to work for Rassendyll. What do you think of it? Why?
- 7- Why do you think Antoinette ask Rassendyll to rescue her?
- 4- What do you think made Michael angry with Antoinette?
- 5- What do you think made the king (Rassendyll) send messengers that the King and the Princess had arranged a date for their wedding?
- 6- Why do you think the people of Strelsau greeted these news with great joy?
- 7- How do you think the doctor was punished as a result of his advice?
- 8- Why do you think the Duke was furious after hearing about the wedding?
- 9- Why do you think the doctor advised the Duke to set the King free at once?
- 10- If you were Michael, would you agree to set the King free as the doctor advised you? Why?
- 11- Why do you think there were new servants at the castle?
- 12- How do you think Antoinette played a great role when the King was ill?
- 13- How far was Johann's information important to them?
- 14- Why do you think Rassendyll offered 50 thousand pieces of gold?
- 15- If you were in Johann's place, would you help them to break into the mansion? Why?
- 16- Why do you think Antoinette would cry out for help at two O'clock?
- 17- What do you think the Marshall's role in the plan of rescuing the king?
- 18- Why do you think the Tarlenheim house was to be filled with lights and music?
- 19- How do you think Rassendyll understood that Rupert had a plan for that night?
- 20- Why do you think Rupert went back secretly to the mansion late that night?

Chapter: 8

Part 1

Students Book Text

1. It was cold waiting in the water of the moat, so when Rupert disappeared into the mansion, I slowly climbed out and waited by the drawbridge gate next to the castle. Now only Detchard, Bersonin and De Gautet were left to protect the King in his prison. If only I had the keys to the King's room, but I knew I'd to be patient.

كان الجو بارداً اثناء انتظارنا في مياه الخندق، ولذلك عندما اختفى روبرت داخل القصر، قفزت للخارج ببطء وانتظرت بجوار بوابة الجسر المتحرك بجوار القلعة، الآن فقط بقي ديتشارد وبيرسونين و دي جوتيت لحماية الملك في سجنه، تمنيت لو كان معي مفاتيح غرفة الملك، ولكني كنت أعلم أنه يجب علي التحلي بالصبر.

2. It was a quiet night and it was about one o'clock in the morning when there was a loud noise from the mansion. I looked up at one of the windows and saw a shadow walk across the light. A woman's voice cried, "Help! Michael, help me!" It was Antoinette de Mauban. This was exactly what I had asked her to say in my message to her, but it was around an hour too early, before my friends had reached the front door to the mansion, and before Johann had time to open it. I pulled out my sword and stood ready for what might happen. Then I heard her calling again. "Help, Michael! It's Rupert Hentzau!" called Antoinette.

لقد كانت ليلة هادئة، وكانت الساعة حوالي الواحدة في الصباح عندما كان هناك ضجيج مرتفع من القصر، نظرت إلى أعلى في أحد النوافذ، ورأيت ظل إنسان يسير على الأقدام عبر الضوء، وصاحت امرأة: "النجدة! ساعدني يا مايكل!" لقد كانت أنطوانيت دو موبان. وكان هذا بالضبط ما قد طلبت منها أن تقوله في رسالتي لها، ولكنه كان مبكراً جداً لنحو ساعة، وكان قبل أن يصل أصدقائي إلى الباب الأمامي للقصر، وقبل أن يحين الوقت لجوهان لفتحه. سحبت سيفي، ووقفت على أهبة الاستعداد لما يمكن أن يحدث. ثم سمعتها تنادي مرة أخرى قائلة: "ساعدني يا مايكل! إنه روبرت هينتزوا!"

3. Michael must have heard Antoinette de Mauban call out, because I then heard him running to help her with his servants. There was now a loud argument. "This woman's been writing secret letters to Rassendyll!" I heard Rupert call out. "She needs to be punished!" "She's my quest," I heard Michael say. "It's you who needs to be punished!" There was a shout and a noisy sword fight began in the room. It was hard to see what was happening, but briefly I saw Rupert and Johann through the window. "That's for you, Johann!" Rupert called, striking his sword at him. "I know you're Rassendyll's spy!" What had happened to Johann? What if he had been hurt? How could he open the door for our men? From the noises in the room, it seemed that Rupert was now fighting many men. Surely he would be caught. However, at the next moment, there was a loud cry and Rupert jumped out of the window and down into the moat below, where he swam away. Somehow, he had escaped.

لا بد أن مايكل سمع أنطوانيت دو موبان تستغيث، لأنني سمعته بعد ذلك يجرى لمساعدتها هو و
خدامه، والآن كان هناك جدال بصوت عالٍ، سمعت روبرت يقول: "هذه المرأة كتبت رسائل
سرية إلى راسينديل! يجب معاقبتها!" وسمعت مايكل يقول: "إنها ضيفتي، وأنت هو من يحتاج
إلى معاقبة!" وكان هناك صراخ وبدأ قتال صاحب بالسيف في الغرفة. كان من الصعب أن أرى
ما يحدث، ولكن فقط رأيت روبرت وجوهان من خلال النافذة. وصاح روبرت قائلاً: "هذا لك،
يا جوهان!" ، وكان يلوح بسيفه في وجهه. "فأنا أعلم أنك كنت جاسوس لراسينديل!" ماذا حدث
لجوهان؟ ماذا لو أنه أصيب بأذى؟ كيف سيتمكن من فتح الباب لرجالنا؟ من الضجيج داخل
الغرفة يبدو أن روبرت كان يقاتل الآن كثير من الرجال. ومن المؤكد أنه سوف يتم القبض
عليه. ومع ذلك، في اللحظة التالية، كان هناك صرخة مدوية وقفز روبرت من النافذة ثم إلى
أسفل إلى الخندق أدناه، حيث أنه سبح بعيداً. وبطريقة ما، هرب.

4. A minute later, De Gautet appeared in front of me, so I struck him with my sword and he fell to the ground. Quickly I looked through his clothes for the keys: there were three. At last I could enter the room where the King was being kept prisoner. Opening the first door, I found myself at the top of some steps which led into a cold, dark room. The only light came from a small candle in one corner. As I walked down the steps, I could just hear voices coming from the room where the King was kept, behind a second door. Carefully walking towards the door, I stepped back quickly when it was suddenly opened. Now I could hear Detchard speaking: "We mustn't kill him yet or there'll be trouble." When a person appeared, I struck him with my sword. It was Bersonin, who fell heavily to the ground.

وبعد دقيقة واحدة ظهر دي جوتيت أمامي، لذلك ضربته بسيفي، فسقط على الأرض ميتاً،
وبسرعة بحثت في ملابسه لأجد المفاتيح: كان هناك ثلاثة مفاتيح. أخيراً يمكنني أن أدخل الغرفة
حيث كان يجري الاحتفاظ بالملك السجنين. عندما فتحت الباب الأول، وجدت نفسي في الجزء
العلوي من بعض السلالم التي كانت تؤدي إلى غرفة مظلمة وباردة. الضوء الوحيد كان قادماً
من شمعة صغيرة في أحد الزوايا. وبينما كنت انزل على السلالم، كنت فقط أسمع أصوات قادمة
من الغرفة حيث يحتفظون بالملك، خلف باب ثاني. وبينما كنت أمشي بعناية نحو الباب، خطوت
للخلف بسرعة عندما تم فتحه فجأة. والآن تمكنت من الاستماع إلى حديث ديتشارد: "لا يجب أن
نقتله الآن وإلا سوف تكون هناك مشكلة". وعندها ظهر شخص آخر فضربته بسيفي. لقد كان
بيرسونين، والذي سقط على الأرض فجأة.

5. Understanding there was danger, Detchard closed the door fast: now surely he was alone in the room with the King and, remembering their plan, I knew the King was in real danger. Taking one of the keys, I quickly unlocked the door to the second room and opened it nervously. I think I expected to see the King had already been killed, but once inside the room I was relieved to see that Detchard was being held by the King's doctor. The King, weak from illness and chained in one corner, looked on in fear. The doctor was too weak to hold Detchard for long, and before I could help him, Detchard broke free and killed the poor doctor with his sword.

عندما أدرك ديتشارد أن هناك خطر، أغلق الباب سريعاً: الآن بالتأكيد كان هو وحده في الغرفة
مع الملك وتذكرت أنا خطتهم، فعرفت أن الملك كان في خطر حقيقي. أخذت واحداً من المفاتيح
وسريعا فتحت باب الغرفة الثانية بعصبية. أعتقد أنني توقعت أن أرى الملك كان قد قُتل بالفعل

ولكن عندما دخلت الغرفة فقد انتابني شعور بالارتياح عندما وجدت طبيب الملك يمسك بديتشارد. كان الملك ضعيفاً من المرض وكان مقيداً بالسلاسل في أحد الزوايا، وكان ينظر في خوف. ولكن الطبيب كان أضعف من أن يمسك بديتشارد لفترة طويلة، وقبل أن أستطيع مساعدته، فر ديتشارد وقتل الطبيب المسكين بسيفه.

6. Detchard turned to me and said, "At last!" I held up my sword and it was lucky that Detchard did not have a gun. We began to fight. He was a much better swordsman than me and knew all the tricks: he smiled when he cut me on the arm, and I would soon have died if the King had not helped me. "My cousin Rudolf!" he cried, as if he only now realised who I was. He reached forward and pushed the legs of a chair into Detchard's body. "Push hard!" I called "Push against his legs!" With the legs of the chair against him, Detchard found it hard to stand up. This made him angry, and he struck the King hard with his sword, but as he did so, he fell over the doctor's body. It was easy for me to kill him as he lay on the floor.

إستدار ديتشارد ناحيتي وقال: "أخيراً"، فرفعت سيفي وكان من حسن الحظ أن ديتشارد لم يكن معه بندقية. بدأنا نتقاتل. كان مبارزاً أفضل مني بكثير فهو يعرف كل الحيل: ابتسم عندما أصابني في ذراعي، وكنت قريباً من الموت إذا لم يساعدني الملك الذي صاح قائلاً: "ابن عمي رودولف!"، كما لو أنه أدرك الآن فقط من أكون. أنتقل إلى الأمام، ودفع جسم ديتشارد برجلي كرسى. ناديته: "إدفع بقوة!، إدفع ضد ساقيه!" وبوجود رجلي الكرسى ضده، وجد ديتشارد صعوبة في الوقوف. وجعله هذا غاضباً، فضرب الملك ضربة قوية بسيفه، ولكن عندما كان يفعل ذلك، سقط على جسم الطبيب. فكان من السهل لي أن أقتله لأنه كان يرقد على الأرض.

7. Was the King dead too? I ran to where he lay. How happy I was when the King **moaned**, so I knew he was alive. But before I could help him, I heard Rupert somewhere outside the King's prison calling out, "Come on, Michael! Let's fight!" I tore a piece from my shirt to make a bandage for the cut on my arm, and quietly opening the prison door, I looked out. The drawbridge was now down once more. Rupert stood in the middle of the bridge with his sword, while the door to the mansion at the other end of the drawbridge was guarded by some very frightened-looking servants, as well as Johann, who I was pleased to see was unhurt. Then Antoinette de Mauban angrily called out from behind the servants, "The Duke's dead, you've already killed him!" "Dead!" called Rupert. "That's good. Then I'm your leader now. Put down your weapons and do as I say."

هل مات الملك أيضاً؟ جريت إلى حيث كان يرقد. كم كان سعادتي عندما تأوه الملك، فعلمت أنه كان على قيد الحياة. ولكن قبل أن أتمكن من مساعدته سمعت روبرت في مكان ما خارج سجن الملك ينادي قائلاً: "هيا، يا مايكل! دعنا نتقاتل!" قمت بتمزيق قطعة من قميصي لكي اعمل ضمادة للإصابة التي كانت في ذراعي، وفتحت باب السجن بهدوء، ونظرت للخارج. كان الجسر المتحرك الآن موضوعاً مرة أخرى. كان روبرت يقف في منتصف الجسر بسيفه، بينما كان الباب المؤدى إلى القصر في الجانب الآخر من الجسر المتحرك يحرسه بعض الخدم يبدو عليهم الرعب، وكذلك جوهان، الذي كان من دواعي سروري أن أراه ولم يصب بأذى. ثم صاحت أنطوانيت دو موبان غاضبةً من وراء الخدام: "لقد مات الدوق، لقد قتلته بالفعل!" فصاح روبرت: "تقولين مات!، هذا أمر جيد، إذاً أنا زعيمكم الآن، ضعوا أسلحتكم وافعلوا ما أقول."

8. Instead of putting down their weapons, however, the servants allowed Antoinette de Mauban to walk onto the bridge, and she was pointing a gun at Rupert. But before she had time to shoot – if, indeed, she planned to – Rupert once again jumped quickly into the water below the bridge. More loud voices were heard and I realised that Sapt and his men must have finally arrived at the front door, on the other side of the mansion. Feeling confident that the King would be safe, I ran after Rupert and also jumped into the water. He swam faster than I could with my wounded arm, and he quickly swam to where the rope was tied to the tree above the moat. He looked surprised but pleased to see the rope and quickly climbed up. I was, perhaps, a minute behind him and once at the top of the rope, I could see him running off into the forest. At one stage I saw him look back at me. I thought I saw him waving, as if it were a game, as if he knew I would never catch him.

بدلاً من وضع أسلحتهم قام الخدم، بالرغم من ذلك، بالسماح لأنطوانيت دو موبان بالسير على الجسر، وكانت تصوب ببندقية تجاه روبرت. ولكن قبل أن يحين الوقت لتطلق النار – إذا كانت، في الواقع، تعزم ذلك – قفز روبرت مرة أخرى بسرعة في الماء تحت الجسر. سمعت أصوات أكثر، وأدركت أن ثابت ورجاله قد وصلوا أخيراً إلى الباب الأمامي للجانب الآخر من القصر. شعرت بالثقة في أن الملك أصبح في مأمن، فركضت خلف روبرت وقفزت أيضاً في الماء. كان يسبح أسرع مما يمكنني مع ذراعي الجرحى، وبسرعة سبح إلى حيث كان الحبل مربوطاً إلى شجرة فوق الخندق. بدت عليه الدهشة ولكنه كان مسروراً لرؤية الحبل وصعد بسرعة لأعلى. وكنت، ربما، وراءه بدقيقة واحدة، وعندما وصلت إلى الجزء العلوي من الحبل، أستطعت أن أراه يلوذ بالفرار داخل الغابة. وفي مرحلة من المراحل، رأيته ينظر إلى الورا ناحتى. أظن أنني رأيته يلوح لي، كما لو كنا في لعبة، كما لو كان يعلم أنني لن أمسك به أبداً.

9. We both ran, further and further into the forest of Zenda, until I heard another cry. What had Rupert done now? Soon I discovered that he had found a boy riding to market, and had quickly pulled him from the horse and taken his place. Rupert was trying to get the boy to be quiet by giving him some money, and this gave me time to catch up with him. "Stop!" I shouted. He looked at me and smiled. "What did you do at the castle?" he asked. "I made sure that you are the last of the Six Men." I told him. "Do you mean that you got inside the King's prison?" he asked with surprise. "I did." "And what's happened to the King?" "He was hurt, but he's alive." I told him. "Why didn't you follow my plan?" he said. "We could have worked well together." "Get off your horse and fight like a man," I said.

ركض كلانا أبعد وأبعد في غابة زيندا، حتى سمعت صرخة أخرى. ماذا فعل روبرت الآن؟ وسرعان ما اكتشفت أنه وجد صبي يركب حصان متجهاً إلى السوق، وقد جره من فوق الحصان بسرعة وأخذ مكانه. كان روبرت يحاول أن يهدأ الصبي بإعطائه بعض المال، وهذا أعطاني الوقت للحاق به. صرخت قائلاً: "قف مكانك!". نظر لي وابتسم. وتساءل: "ماذا كنت تفعل في القلعة؟". قلت له: "لقد تأكدت من أنك أنت آخر الرجال الستة"، فسأل باستغراب: "هل يعني ذلك أنك وصلت إلى داخل سجن الملك؟". "نعم فعلت". "وما الذي حدث للملك؟" قلت له: "لقد أصيب، ولكنه على قيد الحياة" فقال: "لماذا لم تتبع خطتي؟ نحن يمكن أن نعمل معا بشكل جيد." فقلت: "أنزل من فوق حصانك وقاتلني كرجل."

10. I ran at Rupert with my sword, but still on his horse, he easily pushed me away with his own sword. I ran at him again and managed to cut his cheek, but now he rode at me with his sword held high. I would surely have been killed, but at that moment there was a shout as Fritz arrived on another horse carrying a gun. Rupert stopped and looked at us. He understood that he could not fight us both, so he turned the horse and rode away as fast as he could. "Go after him!" I said to Fritz. But Fritz was looking at me, not at Rupert. "Sir, you don't look well." he said, and I suddenly felt very weak. Fritz got off his horse and ran up to me as I fell to the ground. "Is the King safe?" I asked him weakly. "Thanks to you, he is." said Fritz. "But you're injured. Here, let me help you." Next to us, the young boy looked on with wide eyes. "Isn't that the King?" he said, pointing at me. Fritz ignored him.

جريت ناحية روبرت بسيفي، ولكنه كان لا يزال على جواده، فدفعني بسهولة بعيداً بسيفه. ركضت باتجاهه مرة أخرى، وتمكنت من جرح خده، لكنه الآن اتجه ناحيتي شاهراً سيفه، وكان من المؤكد أنني سأقتل، ولكن في تلك اللحظة كان هناك صرخة فقد وصل فريتز على حصان آخر وكان يحمل مسدساً، توقف روبرت ونظر إلينا. وقد فهم أنه لا يمكنه محاربتنا معاً، ولذلك استدار بحصانه وهرب بأسرع ما يمكن. قلت لفريتز: "أذهب خلفه!". ولكن فريتز كان ينظر إلي، وليس لروبرت. وقال: "سيدي، أنت لا تبدو بخير." ، وفجأة شعرت أنني ضعيف جداً. ترجل فريتز عن جواده وركض ناحيتي فقد كنت أسقط على الأرض. سألته بضعف: "هل نجى الملك؟". قال فريتز: "بفضلك، هو كذلك. ولكنك مصاب بجروح. هيا، اسمحلي أن أساعدك." وقريب منا، كان الصبي ينظر إلينا بعيون واسعة. وقال مشيراً إلي: "أليس ذلك هو الملك؟". ولكن فريتز تجاهله.

11. After a long rest, I felt strong enough to walk back, leaning heavily on Fritz's arm. I later learnt from Fritz and Antoinette de Mauban what happened that night at the castle and the events leading up to it. A few months earlier, the Duke had met Antoinette de Mauban in Paris and had asked her to Ruritania to see the coronation. She respected the Duke and was pleased to be his guest. However, some of the Duke's servants told her servants about the Duke's ambitions to be King. She did not like his evil plans and decided to warn me of everything he wanted to do. When the Duke found out that she had warned me in Strelsau, he tricked Antoinette de Mauban by inviting her and her servants to his castle. Once she was there, he made sure they could not leave in order to stop her telling anyone about his plan.

وبعد استراحة طويلة، شعرت أنني أصبحت متماسكاً بما يكفي لأعود سيراً، أستندت بشدة على ذراع فريتز. علمت لاحقاً من فريتز وانطوانيت دو موبان ما حدث تلك الليلة في القلعة والأحداث التي أدت إليها. منذ بضعة أشهر في وقت سابق، قابل الدوق أنطوانيت دو موبان في باريس وطلب منها أن تحضر إلى روريتانيا لرؤية التتويج. كانت تحترم الدوق، وكانت مسروره أن تكون ضيفة عليه. ومع ذلك، قام بعض خدم الدوق بالتصريح لخدمها عن طموحات الدوق في أن يكون الملك. لم تقبل خطته الشريرة، وقررت أن تحذرنى من كل ما يريد أن يفعل. وعندما اكتشف الدوق أنها حذرتني ونحن في ستريلسو، خدع أنطوانيت دو موبان بدعوتها وخدمها إلى قصره. وعندما وصلت هناك، تأكد من أنها لا تستطيع المغادرة لكي يمنعها من أن تخبر أي شخص عن خطته.

Answer The Following Questions

A) Choose the correct answer :

1- Where did Rassendyll wait for it to be two o'clock?

- a) Inside the castle of Zenda b) By the drawbridge gate next to the castle
c) Outside the room where the king was imprisoned d) By the mansion

2- Why couldn't Johann open the door for Sapt and his men as planned?

- a) He forgot Rassendyll's plan b) He was helping the Duke in his fight
c) He was helping Antoinette de Mauban d) He was killed by Robert Hentzau

3- Rassendyll has asked Antoinette to cry for help at two o'clock. Why does she do it earlier?

- a) She is being attacked by Rupert b) Michael was punishing her
c) She misunderstood Rassendyll's plan d) She was in a hurry

4- Sapt and his men would go in and tie up any servants who

- a) would open the front door of the mansion b) did not want to help the King
c) would defend Duke Michael d) did not want to help the Antoinette

5- Nothing went as Rassendyll had planned first because Antoinette

- a) wrote a secret letter to Rassendyll b) was punished by Duke Michael
c) was attacked by Rupert's servants d) called for help an hour earlier

6- Why did Rupert strike his sword at Johann? - He believed that

- a) He was Rassendyll's spy b) He helped Duke Michael
c) He set the king free d) He was the Duke's spy

7- Why did Rupert and Michael fight each other?

- a) Michael thought Rupert was a spy b) Rupert wanted to marry Antoinette
c) Rupert wanted to punish Antoinette d) Antoinette sent letters to Flavia

8- Who killed the Duke?

- a) Rassendyll b) Sapt and Fritz c) Antoinette de Mauban d) Rupert Hentzau

9- Why did Rassendyll kill De Gautet with a sword and not with a gun?

- a) He wanted to attract other people's attention b) He didn't have a gun
c) He didn't want to make any noise d) He was a clever swordsman

10- How did Rassendyll get the keys to the King's prison?

- a) He killed Bersonin and took them from him b) De Gautet gave him the keys
c) He stole them from Duke Michael d) He took them from De Gautet's clothes

11- Who got killed in the first room of the King's prison?

- a) Bersonin b) De Gautet c) Detchard d) Duke Michael

12- Who got killed in the room where the King was?

- a) The doctor and King b) The doctor and Detchard
c) The doctor and Sapt d) The doctor and Robert Hentzau

13- Who got wounded while Rassendyll was trying to save the King?

- a) Sapt and the King b) The King and Duke Michael
c) The King and Rassendyll d) Sapt and Fritz

14- It was lucky that Detchard did not have a gun. If he had had a gun,

- a) he'd have shot the doctor
- b) he'd have been shot by Rassendyll
- c) he would have committed suicide
- d) he would have shot Rassendyll dead

15- What did the doctor do to save the King's life?

- a) He opened the door to set the King free
- b) He held Detchard from behind for some time
- c) He helped Detchard to kill Rassendyll
- d) He broke free and killed Detchard

16- Why didn't the King fight Detchard directly?

- a) The King was weak from illness and in chains
- b) He couldn't move much because of his injury
- c) He was afraid as Detchard had a gun
- d) The doctor had cut off his left leg

17- How did the king help Rassendyll in the fight against Detchard?

- a) By falling over the doctor's body
- b) By pushing a chair into Detchard
- c) By giving Rassendyll a gun to defend himself
- d) By making Rassendyll lose his balance

18- How did the King get hurt?

- a) He held Detchard from behind
- b) Rassendyll pushed a chair at his legs
- c) Detchard struck him hard with his sword
- d) Detchard shot him

19- What happened to the King while Rassendyll and his men were trying to save him?

- a) He was injured and taken to hospital
- b) He was hurt but he was still alive
- c) He died suddenly
- d) He was killed by Detchard

20- When the King pushed a chair against Detchard's legs, Detchard

- a) found it hard to stand still
- b) struck the King with his knife
- c) fell over Rassendyll and killed him
- d) fell over Rassendyll's body

21- What would have happened if the King hadn't helped Rassendyll?

- a) Detchard would have befriended Sapt
- b) Detchard would have become a good swordsman
- c) Rassendyll would have killed Detchard
- d) Detchard would have killed Rassendyll

22- Rupert was standing in the middle of the bridge with his sword ready to fight

- a) Michael's men
- b) Michael's servants
- c) Michael
- d) Detchard

23- What did Antoinette tell Rupert when he came back to fight Michael?

- a) The Duke was killed by him
- b) The Duke was wounded by him.
- c) The Duke had left the mansion
- d) The Duke didn't want to have a fight

24- What did Rupert do when Antoinette pointed a gun at him?

- a) He hid behind Michael's men
- b) He threatened to kill her
- c) He put down his weapon
- d) He quickly jumped into the moat

25- Why couldn't Rassendyll catch Rupert in the moat?

- a) He swam faster than Rassendyll
- b) Rassendyll had his legs injured
- c) Rassendyll had his arms chained
- d) He swam slower than Rassendyll

26- How did Rupert get a horse to escape?

- a) He took it from a boy
- b) He bought it from the market
- c) He found it near the castle
- d) He borrowed it from Bersonin

27- What did Rupert blame Rassendyll for?

- a) For not following his plan
- b) For not killing Michael
- c) For marrying Flavia
- d) For pretending to be the king

28- What did Rassendyll tell Rupert about the king?

- a) The king was hurt but he was still alive
- b) The king was killed
- c) The king returned to the capital
- d) The king was going to die

29- Rupert would have killed Rassendyll if Fritz

- a) had arrived in time to rescue Rassendyll
- b) had found a gun with the boy
- c) hadn't arrived on a horse carrying a gun
- d) had understood that he couldn't fight both men

30- Why did Rupert ride away instead of fighting Rassendyll?

- a) Fritz came with a sword
- b) Rassendyll had a gun
- c) He had taken a horse from the boy
- d) He knew he couldn't fight Rassendyll and Fritz

31- Why didn't Fritz go after Rupert as Rassendyll asked him?

- a) He was a coward
- b) He thought that the boy needed help
- c) He knew that Sapt would kill Rupert
- d) He saw that Rassendyll didn't look well

32- What happened to Rupert at the end?

- a) Rassendyll killed him
- b) Sapt captured him
- c) He escaped
- d) He became King

33- Antoinette decided to warn Rassendyll of everything Michael wanted to do because

- a) She did not like his evil plans
- b) She had met Duke Michael in Paris
- c) Duke Michael had invited her to Ruritania
- d) She was pleased to be Duke Michael's guest

34- Why did Duke Michael invite Antoinette de Mauban to Ruritania?

- a) To lock her in his mansion
- b) To ask her for marriage
- c) To go with him on a hunting trip
- d) To attend the coronation

35- Duke Michael didn't let Antoinette leave his castle in order to

- a) trust her
- b) ask her to look after the king
- c) stop her telling anyone about his plan
- d) prevent her from sending letters to Flavia

B) Answer the following questions :

- 1- Why do you think Rassendyll wished he had the keys to the King's room?
- 2- If you were Rupert, would you want to punish Antoinette for her secret letters?
- 3- Why do you think Rupert wanted to punish Johann?
- 4- Why do you think Rassendyll was worried about Johann?
- 5- In your opinion, Why was Rassendyll sure Rupert would be caught during the fight in the mansion?
- 6- What do you think made Rupert jump out of the window into the moat?
- 7- Why do you think De Gautet came out of the castle?
- 8- Do you think killing De Gautet made it easy for Rassendyll to save the King? Why?
- 9- Detchard said, "We mustn't kill him yet or there'll be trouble." What do you think the trouble would be if they killed the King then?
- 10- What do you think made Rassendyll kill both De Gautet and Bersonin?
- 11- When do you think Detchard understood there was danger in the castle?
- 12- What do you think made Detchard quickly close the door of the King's prison?
- 13- Why do you think the King was in real danger when Detchard closed the door of the King's room?
- 14- Why do you think Rassendyll expected Detchard had already killed the King?
- 15- If you were the doctor, would you try to save the king even if you endangered your life?
- 16- Why do you think Detchard killed the doctor?
- 17- When Rassendyll killed Detchard, the King became safe. Do you agree? Why?
- 18- Imagine that you were Rupert, would you return to the mansion to fight the Duke? Why?
- 19- Why didn't the servants put down their weapons when Robert asked them to?
- 20- Why do you think Rupert jumped into the moat instead of fighting with Antoinette?
- 21- If you were in Antoinette's place, would you try to kill Rupert? Why?
- 22- What made Rassendyll go behind Rupert instead of staying with the King?
- 23- Do you think Rupert knew that the castle was being attacked? Why?
- 24- Why do you think Rupert was surprised when he saw the rope down the moat?
- 25- Imagine you were Rassendyll, would you try to catch up with Rupert? Why?
- 26- Why do you think Rupert needed to get a horse while escaping into the forest?
- 27- Why do you think that Rassendyll didn't follow Rupert's plan?
- 28- Why do you think Rupert ride away instead of fighting Rassendyll and Fritz?
- 29- Why do you think Rupert wasn't killed like others?
- 30- Why do you think the horse boy was surprised when he saw Rassendyll?
- 31- What do you think made Antoinette change her feelings towards Michael?
- 32- What do you think Antoinette's reaction towards Michael's evil plans was?
- 33- How do you think Michael tricked Antoinette?
- 34- What do you think made Michael not want Antoinette to leave the castle?

Chapter: 8

Part 2

Students Book Text

12. Luckily, with Johann as our spy, Antoinette was still able to send us letters and we could use her position in the castle to help us. Somehow, however, Rupert discovered that she was helping us, so he wanted to punish her; by chance he chose the very night that we were attacking the castle. When Michael came to see what was happening, Rupert killed him in the fight that followed. Rupert, it seemed, believed that without the Duke, I really would stay as the King and somehow reward him for his evil work. He did not understand that I was pretending to be the King for the good of Ruritania: he believed I wanted to be King forever.

لحسن الحظ، مع وجود جوهان كجاسوس لنا، كانت أنطوانيت لا تزال قادرة على إرسال رسائل لنا ويمكننا استخدام مكانها في القلعة لمساعدتنا. ومع ذلك، وبطريقة ما، اكتشف روبرت انها كانت تساعدنا، ولذلك أراد أن يعاقبها؛ ومن قبيل الصدفة أنه اختار الليلة ذاتها التي قمنا نحن فيها بمهاجمة القلعة. وعندما جاء مايكل لمعرفة ما كان يحدث، قتله روبرت في المعركة التي تلت ذلك. يبدو أن روبرت أعتقد أنه بدون الدوق، سأظل أنا بالفعل كملك وعلى نحو ما سوف أكافئه على عمله الشر. أنه لم يفهم أنني كنت أتظاهر بأننى الملك لخير روريتانيا: أنه كان يعتقد أنني أردت أن أكون ملكاً إلى الأبد.

13. Because Johann was helping the Duke, he could not open the front door for Sapt and his men at two o'clock, and it took a long time before they could finally enter the mansion. This they did just as Rupert was escaping from Antoinette de Mauban. Soon Sapt found the King lying in his prison, hurt but still alive. He was carried with his face covered to the mansion, where Antoinette helped to look after the poor King until another doctor could arrive. Meanwhile, Fritz came to look for me, knowing that I must have run off into the forest after Rupert.

ولأن جوهان كان يساعد الدوق، لم يستطع أن يفتح الباب الأمامي لثابت ورجاله في الثانية صباحاً، واستغرق ذلك وقتاً طويلاً قبل أن يتمكنوا أخيراً من دخول القصر. وهذا هو ما فعلوه أثناء هروب روبرت من أنطوانيت دو موبان. وسرعان ما وجد ثابت الملك مُلقى على الأرض في سجنه، كان مصاباً ولكنه لا يزال على قيد الحياة. تم نقله، ووجهه مغطى، إلى القصر، حيث ساعدت أنطوانيت في الاعتناء بالملك المسكين حتى وصول طبيب آخر. ومن ناحية أخرى، جاء فريتز يبحث عني، عندما علم أنني أنطلقت إلى الغابة وراء روبرت.

14. Back at the castle, Colonel Sapt had to ask Johann and Antoinette de Mauban to guard the secret about the real King. His men and the servants thought that the King had been injured while rescuing the prisoner, who had gone after Rupert Hentzau. News was sent to Tarlenheim to tell the Princess that the King was hurt but alive, and that she should wait at Tarlenheim for him. The people of Strelsau also heard that the brave King had fought with his brother because he had kept a prisoner in Zenda who was a friend of the King. The Duke had tried to kill the King, who was injured, but the evil Duke had died.

وعندما كانوا في القلعة مرة أخرى، اضطر العقيد ثابت أن يطلب من جوهان وانطوانيت دو موبان أن يحفظوا سر الملك الحقيقي. فرجاله وخدامه يعتقدون أن الملك قد أصيب أثناء إنقاذ السجين، والذي ذهب وراء روبرت هيننزرو. تم إرسال الأخبار إلى تارلينهيم لإخبار الأميرة أن الملك أصيب ولكنه على قيد الحياة، وأنه ينبغي عليها أن تنتظره في تارلينهيم. كما سمع الناس في ستريلسو أن الملك الشجاع تقابل مع أخوه لأنه قد أبقى سجيناً في زيندا والذي كان صديقاً للملك. حاول الدوق أن يقتل الملك، الذي أصيب بجروح، ولكن الدوق الشرير توفي.

15. However, Princess Flavia did not want to wait at Tarlenheim and asked Marshal Strakencz to take her to Zenda at once so she could see the King. Her coach was approaching the castle as Fritz led me back from the forest. When we saw the coach, I quickly hid behind a tree, but we did not realise that the boy whose horse Rupert had taken had followed us. He was very excited and called out, "Princess! The King's here, behind this tree!" We tried to keep the boy quiet, but it was too late. The Princess's coach had stopped and I could see the Marshal leaning out of the coach window to talk to the boy. "What you say is nonsense." called Strakencz. "The King's injured in the castle." "No, really, he's here. He fought a man who took my horse."

ومع ذلك، لم تُرد الأميرة فلافيا الانتظار في تارلينهيم، فطلبت من المشير ستراكينكز أن يأخذها إلى زيندا في الحال لكي تتمكن من رؤية الملك. كان موكبها يقترب من القلعة عندما كان فريتز عائداً بي من الغابة. عندما شاهدنا الموكب، أختبئت بسرعة خلف شجرة، ولكننا لم ندرك أن الصبي صاحب الحصان الذي أخذه روبرت كان قد اتبعنا. وكان منفعلاً جداً ونادى: "أيتها الأميرة! الملك هنا، خلف هذه الشجرة!" حاولنا إبقاء الصبي هادئاً، ولكن الوقت كان قد فات. توقف موكب الأميرة واستطعت أن أرى المشير يميل من نافذة المركبة للتحدث إلى الصبي. قال ستراكينكز: "ما تقوله هو هراء، يرقد الملك مصاباً في القلعة." "لا، حقاً، إنه هنا. لقد حارب الرجل الذي أخذ حصاني."

16. At this moment, Sapt rode out of the castle to meet the party. "This boy says the King's over there behind that tree." said Strakencz to Sapt with a strange look. "No, he's in the castle behind me." said Sapt with a smile. "Please, come and see if you don't believe me." said the boy. The smile disappeared from Sapt's face and he looked worried, before quickly saying, "I'll go." "Let me come, too." said the Princess. Sapt thought for a moment, then said quietly, "Then come alone." The Princess was helped down from the coach. She then walked with Sapt across the grass towards me. I sat down behind the tree, putting my hands over my face. Fritz put his hand on my shoulder.

في هذه اللحظة، خرج ثابت من القلعة لمقابلة الموكب. فقال ستراكينكز إلى ثابت بنظرة غريبة: "هذا الصبي يقول أن الملك هناك خلف تلك الشجرة." فقال ثابت وهو يبتسم: "لا، إنه في القلعة خلفي." فقال الصبي: "ارجوك، تعال وانظر إذا كنت لا تصدقني." اختفت الابتسامة من وجه ثابت وبدا عليه القلق، قبل أن يقول بسرعة: "سوف أرى." وقالت الأميرة: "اسمح لي أن أتي أيضاً." فكر ثابت للحظة، ثم قال بهدوء، "إذاً تعال وحدك." ساعدوا الأميرة لتترجل من الحافلة. ثم سارت مع ثابت عبر العشب تجاهي. كنت جالسا خلف الشجرة، واضعاً يدي على وجهي. وكان فريتز يضع يده على كتفي.

17. When Princess Flavia saw me, she ran up and cried, "It is you! Are you hurt?" I said nothing, so she looked at Sapt and said, "What's this game you're playing?" "This is not the King." said Sapt quietly. "What do you mean it isn't the King?" said the Princess. "This is not the King." said Sapt again. "He is the King!" cried Flavia. "It's his face! Rudolf, look at me! What's happening?" Looking into her eyes, I said, "Forgive me, Madame. I'm not the King." The Princess looked surprised, then frightened, and I could see she didn't know what to say. "Come." Sapt said gently to the Princess. "It's time you came into the castle. We have much to discuss." I watched as she walked away. Now my game was nearly at an end.

عندما رأتنى الأميرة فلافيا الأميرة، ركضت نحوى وصاحت: "أنت أنت! هل أنت مصاب؟" لم أقل أى شيء، لذلك نظرت الى ثابت، وقالت: "ما هذه اللعبة التي تلعبونها؟" فقال ثابت بهدوء: "هذا ليس الملك." قالت الأميرة "ماذا تقصد بأنه ليس الملك؟". فقال ثابت مرة أخرى: "هذا ليس الملك." فصاحت فلافيا: "أنت هو الملك!، أنه وجهه! رودولف، أنظر إلي! ما الذي يحدث؟" نظرت في عينيها، وقلت: "سامحيني سيدتى، أنا لست الملك." أندهشت الأميرة وخافت وفهمت أنها لا تعرف ماذا تقول. قال ثابت بلطف للأميرة: "تعالى، لقد حان الوقت لتدخلى القلعة. لدينا الكثير لنناقشه." شاهدهتها وهى تمشى بعيداً. الآن كانت لعبتى تقريبا في نهايتها.

18. All that day Fritz and I waited in the forest while the Princess stayed in the castle with the King. That night, when it was dark, Fritz led me to the castle where I stayed, unseen, in the rooms that had been the King's prison. Johann brought me food and told me what he knew. The King was getting better and had seen the Princess with Sapt, and Marshal Strakencz had returned to Strelsau. Johann also said that everyone was talking about the strange prisoner of Zenda and who he could be. Some said he was an English friend of the King's who had heard about the Duke's plans, so the Duke had locked him up to stop him from speaking to the King.

طوال ذلك اليوم، انتظرت أنا وفريتز في الغابة بينما بقيت الأميرة في القلعة مع الملك. وفي تلك الليلة، عندما حل الظلام، أخذنى فريتز إلى القلعة حيث مكثت، بعيداً عن مرئى الجميع، في الغرف التي قد تم سجن الملك فيها. جوهان جلب لي الطعام وقال لي كل ما يعرفه. الملك كان يتحسن، ورأى الأميرة حيث أتت مع ثابت، وقد عاد المارشال ستراكينكز إلى ستريلسو. وقال جوهان أيضا أن الجميع كان يتحدث عن سجين زيندرا الغريب ومن يمكن أن يكون. البعض قال أنه صديق إنجليزي للملك والذي كان قد سمع عن خطط الدوق، ولذلك حبسه الدوق لكي يمنعه من التحدث إلى الملك.

19. Later that evening, Fritz came to me and said the King wanted to see me. So I went to his room, where he was lying in bed with a doctor next to him. He looked weak and tired, but smiled when he saw me. "Cousin! My friend! You're injured, too. We're always the same, you and I!" I smiled and bowed down before him. "I want to thank you." he said. "I hoped that tomorrow, you'd come with me to Strelsau and tell everyone about the brave things that you've done, but Sapt tells me that this isn't possible." "He's right, sir. My work in your country is complete." "Very well, I'll return to Strelsau alone. People know that the King was injured, so they won't be surprised to see me looking a little different. But you've taught me

something, cousin Rudolf. You've shown me what a true King should be." he said. "I'd happily help you again, sir." I said. And I meant it, thinking that perhaps I'd need to. Nobody knew where Rupert had disappeared to, and the thought of the man who had almost beaten me still makes my heart beat louder in my chest.

في وقت لاحق من هذا المساء، جاء لي فريتز وقال أن الملك يريد أن يراني. فذهبت إلى غرفته، حيث كان يرقد في السرير وهناك طبيب بجواره. كان ضعيفاً ومتعباً، لكنه ابتسم عندما رأيته: "ابن عمي! صديقي! أنت أصبت أيضاً. نحن دائماً مثل بعضنا، أنت وأنا!" ابتسمت، وانحنيت أمامه. وقال: "أريد أن أشكرك، كنت أأمل أن غدا ستأتي معي إلى ستريلسو وأخبر الجميع عن الأشياء الشجاعة الذي قمت بها، ولكن ثابت يقول أن هذا غير ممكن". "أنه على حق، سيدي الرئيس. لقد أكتمل عملي في بلدكم". "جيد جداً، سوف أعود إلى ستريلسو وحدي. الناس يعرفون أن الملك كان قد أصيب، ولذلك لن يندهشوا لرؤيتي وأنا أبدو مختلفاً قليلاً. ولكنك علمتني شيئاً ما، يا ابن عمي رودولف. لقد بينت لي ما ينبغي أن يكون عليه الملك الحقيقي." فقلت: "سأكون سعيداً إن ساعدتك مرة أخرى، يا سيدي." وكنت أعني ذلك، ودار في فكري أنني ربما أضطر لذلك. فلا أحد يعرف أين اختفى روبرت، والتفكير في الرجل الذي هزمني تقريباً، كان لا يزال قلبي ينبض بصوت أعلى في صدري.

20. "The Princess has asked to see you, too." said the King. "She can come in now." "Does she know everything?" I whispered, before she arrived. "She does." the King answered. The Princess came into the room and I bowed down to her. "It seems you've tricked me." she said, but not unkindly. "I would like to apologise to you for this." I said. "You don't need to apologise. I should thank you for all you've done for Ruritania." she said. "I've learned all about duties and responsibilities." I said to her. "It's a lesson I'll never forget." "And we'll never forget how you've helped the King." she replied. The King smiled, then closed his eyes and fell asleep, and the doctor said it was best if I left him. I bowed and left the people who would shape the future of Ruritania, not knowing that I would never see the King, the Princess – or Rupert – ever again.

وقال الملك: "الأميرة طلبت أن تراك، أيضاً. قد تأتي الآن." همست قبل وصولها: "وهل هي تعرف كل شيء؟". فأجاب الملك: "نعم". دخلت الأميرة إلى الغرفة وانحنيت لها. بأسلوب ليس بالخشن قالت: "يبدو أنك خدعتني". قلت: "أود أن اعتذر لك عن هذا". فقالت: "لا تحتاج إلى الاعتذار. بل يجب أن أشكرك على كل ما قمت به من أجل روريتانيا". قلت لها: "لقد تعلمت كل شيء عن الواجبات والمسؤوليات، أنه درس لن أنساه أبداً". فأجابت: "ونحن لن ننسى أبداً كيف ساعدت الملك". انتسم الملك، ثم غلق عينيه وغط في النوم، وقال الطبيب أنه من الأفضل لو تركته وذهبت. انحنيت، وتركت الناس الذين سيشكلون مستقبل روريتانيا، لا أعرف أن كنت سوف أرى الملك، أو الأميرة – أو روبرت – مرة أخرى في أي وقت لاحق.

21. A few hours later, Sapt and Fritz bowed down to me as I got on a train at a small station near the border with Ruritania. The other passengers on the train must have thought an important person in a large coat and hat was about to leave their country, but it was only I, Rudolf Rassendyll, an English gentleman.

وبعد بضع ساعات، انحنى ثابت وفريتز أمامي عندما صعدت على متن قطار في محطة صغيرة بالقرب من الحدود مع روريتانيا. ومن المؤكد أن الركاب الآخرين على متن القطار قد لاحظوا

أن شخصاً مهماً يرتدى معطف كبير وقبعة كان على وشك مغادرة بلدهم، لكنه كان انا فحسب، رودولف راسينديل، رجل إنجليزي.

22. When I finally returned to England, I had some explaining to do. My brother Robert and his wife Rose told me that everyone had been looking for me. And Rose was very disappointed when I told her I had not written a book. "At least the ambassador has a job for you soon." she said. "He now knows which country he'll be sent to." "Where's that?" I asked. "Ruritania. Sir Jacob Borrodaile is to be the British Ambassador in Strelsau." "I don't think it'd be a good idea for me to work there." I said. "But you promised you'd take the job!" cried Rose. "You're right, but please look at this." I said, showing them a photograph in a newspaper which showed the King's coronation. There was I, with Sapt, Fritz, Michael and the Princess. Robert and Rose looked at it in amazement. "Yes, you look very like the King of Ruritania." said Rose. "But this is just an excuse. You could have become an ambassador yourself one day! If you don't go, you'll never be anyone important!"

عندما عدت أخيراً إلى إنكلترا، كان علي أن أقدم بعض التوضيحات. أخبرني أخي روبرت وزوجته روز أن الجميع كانوا يبحثون عني. وأصيبت روز بخيبة أمل كبيرة عندما أخبرتها أنني لم أكتب كتاب. فقالت: "على الأقل ما زال السفير لديه وظيفة لك، أنه يعرف الآن البلد الذي سوف يتم إرساله إليه". سألت: "أين ذلك؟". "روريتانيا. السيد جاكوب بورديل سيكون السفير البريطاني في ستريلسو". قلت: "لا أعتقد أنها ستكون فكرة جيدة بالنسبة لي للعمل هناك". بكت روز: "ولكنك وعدت أنك ستقبل هذه الوظيفة!". قلت: "أنت محقة، ولكن أنظري لهذا". أظهرت لهم صورة في إحدى الصحف والتي تظهر تتويج الملك. كانت صورتي مع ثابت وفريترز ومايكل والأميرة. نظر روبرت وروز إليها في ذهول. وقالت روز: "نعم، تبدو شبيهاً جداً بملك روريتانيا، ولكن هذه مجرد ذريعة. يمكنك أن تصبح سفيراً يوماً ما! إذا لم تذهب، لن تكون أبداً أي شخص مهم".

23. I knew, however, that I did not need to go. I had been something far more important than an ambassador: I had been a King. I remembered and understood those words Rose had said to me all those months ago: a person with a position in society has responsibilities. But even without a position in society, we all have a duty to help other people when we can, and we all become better people for doing so.

ومع هذا، عرفت أنني لم أكن في حاجة للذهاب. لقد كنت شيئاً أكثر أهمية من سفير: لقد كنت ملك. تذكرت وفهمت تلك الكلمات التي قالتها روز لي طوال تلك الأشهر التي مضت: أي شخص ذو مكانة في المجتمع لديه مسؤوليات. ولكن حتى بدون مكانة في المجتمع، علينا جميعاً واجب مساعدة الآخرين عندما نستطيع، ونحن جميعاً نصبح أفضل لقيامنا بذلك.

Answer The Following Questions

A) Choose the correct answer :

1- How could Antoinette continue to send letters to Rassendyll?

- | | |
|---------------------------|--|
| a) With the help of Sapt | b) With the help of Johann |
| c) With the help of Fritz | d) With the help of the innkeeper's daughter |

2- Rupert couldn't understand that Rassendyll was pretending to be the King

- a) for the good of Ruritania
- b) for money
- c) for his family
- d) for Flavia

3- Why did it take a long time for Sapt and his men to enter the mansion?

- a) They had to swim in the moat
- b) Johann couldn't open the door on time
- c) The drawbridge was closed
- d) The Duke was fighting with Rupert

4- The boy told the Princess and Strakencz that the King was

- a) behind the tree
- b) in the castle
- c) under the drawbridge
- d) in his palace

5- What did Rassendyll and Sapt tell Flavia when she came near the tree?

- a) Rassendyll was the King's friend
- b) Rassendyll wasn't the real king
- c) Rassendyll was the real king
- d) Rassendyll was the prisoner of Zenda

6- Where did Rassendyll stay when he came back to the castle?

- a) In the room that the king had been imprisoned in
- b) In the mansion
- c) In the hunting lodge
- d) In the summer house

7- Who did the people of Strelsau think had killed the Duke?

- a) Rupert
- b) Rassendyll
- c) The King
- d) Sapt

8- What did Sapt ask Johann and Antoinette to do?

- a) To tell no one that Rassendyll was the prisoner
- b) To tell everyone that the King was the prisoner
- c) To tell everyone the secrets of the King
- d) To guard the secret about the real King

9- Sapt's men were told that the King was wounded while he was.....

- a) fighting to rescue the doctor
- b) fighting the doctor to rescue his friend
- c) fighting to rescue his friend
- d) fighting for his life

10- What were the people of Strelsau told to justify Michael's death?

- a) Robert had to kill him as he hated him
- b) The King had to kill him to rescue his friend
- c) Rassendyll killed him to rescue the king
- d) Michael's men killed him to rescue the king

11- Sapt asked the Princess to come alone to see the King behind the tree because he didn't.....

- a) want the boy to tell lies
- b) want Rassendyll to know about Marshal Strakencz
- c) want to rescue the King
- d) want Marshal Strakencz to know about Rassendyll

12- Sapt had the real King taken from his prison with his face covered as he didn't want his men or the servants to see

- a) who the prisoner really was
- b) that Rassendyll was the prisoner
- c) who had killed Duke Michael
- d) that the king had rescued his friend

13- What did Sapt's men and the servants think happened to the King and to the prisoner?

- a) The King was killed while rescuing the prisoner
- b) The prisoner was wounded while rescuing the King
- c) The prisoner was killed while rescuing the King
- d) The King was wounded while rescuing the prisoner

14- Who did the people of Strelsau think Rassendyll could be?

- a) An English friend of the Duke's
- b) An English relative of the King's
- c) An English friend of the King's
- d) The King's twin brother

15- Why did Rassendyll wait in the forest until dark to go to the castle?

- a) He didn't want the King to see him
- b) He didn't want anyone to see him
- c) He wanted to stay with the boy in the forest
- d) He wanted to go into the castle with Flavia

16- How did Rassendyll teach the King how to be a real king?

- a) He took his responsibilities as King seriously
- b) He never tried to run the country well
- c) He wanted to remain King forever
- d) He risked his own life to marry Flavia

17- If Rassendyll hadn't continued to be the King, Michael would have

- a) killed Rassendyll and Flavia
- b) married Antoinette and killed the King
- c) asked the Marshal to kill the king
- d) taken the crown and killed the King

18- Why didn't Rassendyll remain the King?

- a) He wanted to marry Flavia
- b) He wanted to tell Rose about his adventure
- c) The King was still alive
- d) He wanted to fight Robert

19- Why was the King very grateful to Rassendyll?

- a) He taught him how to be a real King
- b) People stopped thinking well about the King
- c) he saved his brother's life
- d) People stopped thinking badly about the Duke

20- Who brought Princess Flavia from Tarlenheim to see the King?

- a) She went alone
- b) Sapt
- c) One of the six men
- d) Marshal Strakencz

21- Why was the Princess grateful to Rassendyll?

- a) He could kill Duke Michael
- b) He saved the King's life and the crown
- c) He made her believe he was the real king
- d) He tricked her

22- Why did Sapt tell the King that it wasn't possible for Rassendyll to go back to Strelsau?

- a) People would mistake him for the King
- b) People would think he was the King's friend
- c) People would know he was the prisoner
- d) People would realize the King was popular

23- Why did Rose feel very disappointed with Rassendyll?

- a) He had written a book
- b) He refused to write a book
- c) He refused to work with Sir Jacob
- d) He wanted to return to Ruritania

24- Rassendyll refused to work for Sir Jacob in Ruritania because there would be problems as Rassendyll

- a) wanted to fight Robert b) looked like the King
c) wanted to be the King d) had a photograph which showed coronation

25- What did Rassendyll learn from his adventures?

- a) How to become a pretend King b) How to search for a suitable job
c) How to go on journeys d) How to shoulder responsibilities

26- What does Rassendyll teach the real King?

- a) what a real King should be b) how to trick people
c) how to find Rupert d) how to fight

B) Answer the following questions :

- 1- Do you think Rassendyll was lucky that Antoinette was locked in the castle? Why?
- 2- How do you think Antoinette could keep in touch with Rassendyll?
- 3- Why do you think they covered the King's face while carrying him to the mansion?
- 4- Why do you think Johann couldn't open the front door for Sapt and his men?
- 5- If you were Sapt, how would you try to make people think their king was brave?
- 6- What story was told to the people of Strelsau about the prisoner of Zenda?
- 7- Why do you think the people didn't sympathize with the Duke's death?
- 8- What do you think made Flavia go to the castle despite all dangers?
- 9- Why do you think Rassendyll hid on seeing Flavia's coach near the castle?
- 10- How do you think Flavia discovered Rassendyll's game?
- 11- The Princess accused Sapt that he was playing a game. Illustrate.
- 12- Why do you think the King wanted Rassendyll to go with him to Strelsau?
- 13- Why do you think Sapt was against the idea of Rassendyll's going to Strelsau with the King?
- 14- In your point of view, how did Rassendyll teach the King a lesson in life?
- 15- In what ways do you think the real King will rule differently after rescuing him?
- 16- The Princess wasn't angry with Rassendyll despite tricking her. Discuss.
- 17- Rassendyll was similar to the King in many respects. Illustrate.
- 18- What was Rassendyll's opinion about working with sir Jacob in Ruritania?
- 19- Why do you think Rassendyll didn't accept the job he was offered in Ruritania?
- 20- What lessons do you think Rassendyll learnt from his adventure in Ruritania?
- 21- In your opinion, what is the moral of The Prisoner of Zenda?
- 22- If Rassendyll was a better ruler than the real King, would it be wrong for him to remain King?
- 23- How do you think Rassendyll believed in Rose's words?
- 24- Rassendyll became wise after his experience as a king. Illustrate.
- 25- Why would it be a ridiculous thing if Rassendyll accepted his job in Ruritania?

With My Best Wishes